



Software Engineering Hand Book

TOPS Technologies

Contents

Software Engineering	1
Hand Book	1
Module 1-What is Software	
What is Software?.....	14
1.)System s/w or OS:.....	14
2)Application s/w:	14
3)Programming s/w:	14
What is Software Engineering?.....	15
Software Development Life Cycle	15
SDLC Phases	16
Requirement Gathering.....	16
Analysis Phase	17
Design Phase	17
Implementation Phase.....	17
Testing Phase	18
Maintenance Phase	18
What is a data flow diagram (DFD)?	19
DFD Diagram Notations	19
Naming and Drawing DFD Elements.....	21
Flow chart.....	25
Common Flowchart Symbols.....	25
Model Design with UML	27
What is Class?.....	28
What is a Class Diagram?	28
Basic Class Diagram Symbols and Notations	28
What is a State Diagram?.....	34
What is a State?.....	34
Difference between state diagram and flowchart	34
Basic components of a statechart diagram.....	34
Steps to draw a state diagram.....	34
Interaction diagram.....	37
Purposes:.....	37
The Sequence Diagram.....	38
The Sequence Diagram.....	39
Data Dictionary	40
Software Design Patterns	41
Types of Design Patterns	42
1.Creational.....	42
2.Structural.....	42
3.Behavioral.....	42

TOPS Technologies

Module 2 - Web Development

What is Website?	45
CLIENTS AND SERVERS	45
Difference between CLIENTS AND SERVERS	46
Web browsers.....	46
Web servers.....	47
Understanding the Web Page and Home Page	47
Web Designing	47
Introduction to HTML	48
HTML Versions	48
HTML Tag List	49
HTML Headings	50
HTML Anchor Tag	51
HTML Images	52
HTML List.....	53
HTML Table	55
HTML Form	60
Introduction to HTML5	61
Removed elements from HTML5	61
Add elements to HTML5	62
Differenece between HTML and HTML5	64
CSS (Cascading Style Sheets)	68
CSS Selector	68
Types of CSS	68
CSS classes and id.....	71
Introduction to CSS3	75
Psudo class.....	75
Text Properties in css3.....	79
Differenece between CSS and CSS3	82
Introduction to Bootstrap	84

Module 3 – Programming Language

Introduction to C	88
History	88
Objectives	88
Features of C	89
Use of C	91
C for Personal Computers	91
Editing	91
Compiling	91
Linking	91
Executable files	92
Structure of C Programs	92

TOPS Technologies

The layout of C Programs	93
Preprocessors Statements.....	93
Global Declaration	93
Local Declarations.....	93
Program Statements	93
User defined function	94
Objectives	94
Keyword and Identifier	95
Identifiers	95
Constants	95
Data Types	97
Qualifier.....	97
Size qualifiers: short, long	97
Sign qualifiers: signed, unsigned	97
Variable	97
Integer Number Variables.....	98
Decimal Number Variables.....	98
Float.....	98
Double	98
Character Variables	98
Void Data type	99
Enum Data Type.....	99
Typedef.....	99
Input and Output Functions	99
The % Format Specifiers	99
Formatting Your Output	99
Single character input output	100
Storage Classes	101
1)Auto:.....	101
2)Register:.....	101
3)Static:.....	101
4)Extern:	102
Operators	102
Arithmetic Operator.....	102
Relational Operator	104
Logical Operator	106
Bitwise Operator	108
Assignment Operator.....	111
Misc Operator	114
Operators Precedence in c	115
Expression Evolution.....	118
Arithmetic Expressions.....	118
Implicit Conversion:.....	119

TOPS Technologies

Explicit Conversion:	119
Decision making and branching statements	120
1)if statement	120
2) if..else statement.....	121
3) Nested if statement.....	123
4) else_if ladder.....	124
5) Switch statement	126
Goto statement	128
The GOTO statement	128
Control Loops	130
Decision making –Loop	130
Types of loops:	130
The While loop.....	130
The for loop.....	132
The do while loop.....	134
Using break and continue Within Loops	135
Array	138
one dimension array	138
Initialize array at compile time	138
Initialize array at run time.....	139
Gets and puts function	139
Two dimension array	140
Initialize array at compile time	140
Initialize array at run time.....	141
Multidimensional arrays:	141
Handling of Character String	142
Initializing Strings	142
Writing Strings to the Screen	142
Reading Strings from the Terminal	143
Arithmetic Operations on Strings	143
String Operations	144
Length of String	144
Concatenation of Strings	145
Compare Two Strings	145
Compare Two Strings(Not Case Sensitive)	145
Copy Strings	145
Converting Uppercase Strings to Lowercase Strings	145
Reversing the Order of a String	145
Converting Lowercase Strings to Uppercase Strings	146
Function:	147
Types of Function	147
Built In Functions:.....	147
UserDefineFunctions:.....	147
Benefit of using function	147

TOPS Technologies

Function body	147
Return statement	148
Structure of function	148
Function header	148
How to use the function	148
Types of UserDefine Functions	149
1. With return type and with parameter	149
2 With return type and without parameter	150
3. Without return type and with parameter	151
4. Without return type and without parameter	153
Passing Values to Function.....	154
Pass by value	154
Pass by pointer	154
Pass an array to function	154
Source code example of various way to pass arguments to function	155
Why Recursive Function	157
Note of Using Recursive Function	157
Example of Using Recursive Function	157
Structures and unions.....	159
Structures	159
Initializing a Structure	159
Arrays of Structure	161
Structure within a Structure	162
Unions	163
Functions and Structures	164
Pass Structure to a Function	164
Pointer	166
Dynamic Memory Allocation	168
Dynamic Memory Allocation Process	168
Allocating a Block of Memory	168
Allocating Multiple Blocks of Memory	168
Releasing the Used Space	168
Output.....	169
Linked List.....	170
Advantages of Linked Lists	170
Linked lists Types	171
Advantages of Linked Lists	171
Advantages of Linked Lists	171
Use of Linked Lists	171
Types of Linked Lists	171
Creating Linked Lists	172
Traversing a Linked List	172
Example of Linked List	173
File Management In C	179

TOPS Technologies

File Operation function in C.....	179
Defining and opening a file	180
Closing a file	180
The getw and putw functions:.....	182
The fprintf & fscanf functions	183
Random access to files	184
fseek function:.....	184
C Language - The Preprocessor.....	184
The Preprocessor	184
Preprocessor directives	185
Macros:.....	185
#define identifier string	185
Simple macro substitution:	185
Macros as arguments:.....	185
Nesting of macros:	185
Undefining a macro	185
File inclusion:.....	186

Module 4 – Programming OOPS

Introduction to C++.....	188
Basic Concept of OOP and Structure of C++ Program	188
my first program in C++	188
#include <iostream.h>	188
using namespace std;	189
int main ()	189
Characteristics of c++.....	189
Object Oriented Programming:.....	189
Objects	190
Classes:	191
Inheritance	191
Data Abstraction.....	191
Polymorphism	191
Overloading:	191
Output.....	192
Comments	193
Declaration of Variable	193
Data Type	194
Key words	196
Identifiers.....	196
Constants	196
Variable Scope in Functions:.....	196
Local Variables:	197
The output of the above example is:.....	197
Global Variables:.....	197

TOPS Technologies

Storage Class	198
What is storage Class?.....	198
Automatic Storage Class.....	198
External Storage Class.....	199
Static Storage Class	199
C++ Character Functions.....	199
Function.....	200
Function With No type use of Void:.....	201
Output.....	202
Argument Passed By Value and Passed By Reference	202
Default Values in Parameters:	204
Overloaded Functions	204
Inline functions.....	206
Recursive Function.....	207
Declaring functions.	208
Variable Scope in Functions:.....	210
Local Variables:	210
The output of the above example is:.....	210
Global Variables:.....	210
Inline Function:	211
What is Inline Function?.....	211
Reaon for the need of Inline Function	211
What happens when an inline function is written?.....	212
General Format of inline Function	212
Friend Functions	214
The Need for Friend Function:.....	214
What is a Friend Function?	214
How to define and use Friend Function in C++:.....	214
Some important points to note while using friend functions in C++:.....	214
Scope Resolution Operator.....	215
Arrays	216
What is an array?.....	216
Initializing arrays.....	216
How to access an array element?	216
What is a Multidimensional Array?	217
Static in C++ Class	218
Static Function Members	219
Class, Constructor and Destructor	220
Constructors:	220
Default Constructor	217
Copy constructor	221
Parameterized Constructor.....	222

TOPS Technologies

Dynamic Constructor.....	223
Virtaual Constructor	223
Destructors.....	226
Inheritance.....	227
What is Inheritance?.....	227
Types of inheritance	227
Features or Advantages of Inheritance	227
Reusability	227
Saves Time and Effort	227
Multiple Inheritance	229
Multilevel Inheritance.....	230
Hierarchical Inheritance.....	231
Hybrid Inheritance.....	232
Polymorphism and Overloading	234
The this pointer (C++ Only).....	234
Operator Overloading.....	235
Unary Operators:.....	235
Binary Operators:	235
Operator Overloading - Unary operators	235
The output of the above program is:.....	237
Operator Overloading - Binary Operators	238
Binary operator overloading example	238
Abstract Class.....	240
Virtual base Classes.....	241
What are Virtual Functions?	242
Need for Virtual Function:.....	242
Properties of Virtual Functions	243
Virtual Function:	243
File in C++	244
Opening a File.....	245
Writing to a File	245
Reading from a File.....	245
Read & Write Example.....	245
File Position Pointers:.....	246
String in C++	247
C++ provides following two types of string representations:	247
C++ supports a wide range of functions that manipulate null-terminated strings:.....	247
The string Class in C++	248
C++ Memory Management Operators	249
Need for Memory Management operators	249
What are memory management operators?.....	249
New operator	247
Or.....	250

TOPS Technologies

Delete operator	250
General syntax of delete operator in C++:.....	250
Templates.....	251
Example of Template Class	252
Example of Function Templates with Multiple Parameters.....	253
Command Line Argument in C/C++	254
Algorithm.....	256
HOW TO WRITE ALGORITHMS:	256
FLOWCHART	256
Algorithm And Flowchart Example	257
Binary Number	257
Conversion from Decimal to Binary.....	258
Computer Arithmetic	258
Negative Number Representation.....	259
Addition.....	260
Subtraction.....	262
Multiplication.....	264
Division	268
Shift-and-subtract algorithm	270
Signed division.....	271
Floating point numbers	271
Normalization	271
64 Bit floating point representation of number	272
Designing Recursive Algorithms	273
Data Structure	274
STACK	275
QUEUE.....	280
Queue Variations.....	282
Double ended Queue	282
Circular Queue	282

Module 5 - Database

Purpose of Database Systems	287
DBMS Database Models.....	289
Hierarchical Model.....	289
Network Model	289
Entity-relationship Model	290
Relational Model.....	290
RDBMS.....	291
E-R Model.....	291
Feature of E-R Model.....	291
Attributes.....	292
a)Simple and Composite Attribute	292

TOPS Technologies

b)Single valued and Multivalued Attribute.....	292
c) Derived Attribute.....	293
d) Null Attribute	293
Relationship Sets	293
Mapping Cardinalities	293
Participation Constraints.....	294
E-R Diagram.....	295
E-R Model (Hospital)	296
Database and Structure Query Language.....	296
Objectives	296
Relational Databases	298
Example	298
Customers.....	298
Products....	299
Orders....	299
Database Management Systems	300
Local DBMS	300
Server DBMS.....	301
Structure Query Language.....	302
What is SQL?	302
Why SQL?	302
Keys	302
Primary Key	302
Unique Key.....	303
Foreign Key	303
Database Normalization	303
Functional Dependency	304
Types of Functional Dependency	304
Trivial Functional Dependency	304
Non-Trivial Functional Dependency	305
Inference Rule	305
Reflexive rule.....	305
Augmentation rule.....	305
Transitive rule	305
Union rule	305
Decomposition rule	306
Pseudo Transitive rule.....	306
Properties of Normalized Relations	308
Types of Normal Forms.....	307
First Normal Form.....	308
Second Normal Form	308
Third Normal Form	308

TOPS Technologies

BCNF.....	312
Fourth Normal Form.....	313
Fifth Normal Form	315
Relational Deomposition	317
Types of Decomposition.....	317
Dependency Preserving	319
Multivalued Dependency	319
Join Dependency	320
Inclusion Dependency	320
Relational Algebra.....	321
Sql Process	328
SQL Commands	328
DDL – Data Query Language	328
DQL – Data Query Language	329
DML – Data Manipulation Language	329
DCL – Data Control Language	329
TCL – Transaction Control Language.....	329
SQL Join Types	330
Inner Join Syntax.....	330
Right Join Syntax	330
Full Join Syntax.....	330
What are SQL Functions?.....	334
What is a Stored Procedure?	338
Stored Procedure with One Parameter	339
Stored Procedure with Multiple Parameters.....	339
Trigger	339
Transaction.....	341
ACID PROPERTY.....	342
Transaction Control	343
Cursor	344
Main components of Cursors	344
Database Backup and Recovery.....	345
Importance of Backups	345
Causes of Failure.....	346
Recovery	346

Module 6 – Linux Scripting

What is Bash?	348
What is shell scripting?	348
Creating and executing Bash shell Scripts.....	348
User input.....	349
Quoting Special Characters:	350
Ranges	351

TOPS Technologies

Bash Conditionals and Control Structures	351
Operators	352
Case Statements:	352

What is Software?

Software: s/w is the language of computer.

- is a collection of computer programs and related data that provide the instructions for telling a computer what to do and how to do it.
 - Just like human language.
 - 3 main groups depending on their use and application.
- 1) System software / operating system.
 - 2) Application s/w
 - 3) Programming language

1) System s/w or OS:

- provides the basic functions for computer usage and helps to run the computer hardware and system.
- is the s/w used by the computer to translate inputs from various sources into a language which a machine can understand.
- Basically OS coordinates the different hardware components of a computer.
- Ex. Linux, window, macOS, Android, iOS

2) Application s/w:

- is the general designation of computer programs for performing user tasks.
 - Types of application s/w
- 1) Mobile app:
 - Application that run on mobile
 - Ex. Instagram, facebook, etc
 - 2) Desktop app:
 - That run stand-alone in a desktop or laptop computer.
 - Ex. Microsoft office suite which includes Word, Excel and PowerPoint.
 - Ex. Outlook for email, and firefox, Google Chrome, Mozilla are the web browser.
 - Anti-virus is an application and so is the media player.
 - 3) Web app:
 - That run on a web browser
 - ex. google.com, facebook.com, etc

3) Programming s/w:

- is the process of designing, writing, testing, debugging, and maintaining the source code of computer programs.
- This s/w is pawritten in a programming language.
- The purpose of programming is to create a program that exhibits a certain desired behavior.

- Ex. c++, html, java, Simlab, php, Python and Visual basic.

What is Software Engineering?

Software: a Program or set of Programs containing instructions which provide desired functionality.

Engineering: Process of designing and building something that ensure particular purpose.

Software Engineering:

-Software engineering is the art of developing quality software on time and within budget.||

Software Engineering is a systematic approach to the design, development, operation, and maintenance of a software system.

A naive view: Problem Specification Final Program

But...

- Where did the specification come from?
- How do you know the specification corresponds to the user's needs?
- How did you decide how to structure your program?
- How do you know the program actually meets the specification?
- How do you know your program will always work correctly?
- What do you do if the users' needs change?
- How do you divide tasks up if you have more than a one-person team?

-Software engineering is the multi-person construction of multi-version software|| - Parnas

- Team-work
 - Scale issue (-program well|| is not enough) + Communication Issue
- Successful software systems must evolve or perish
 - Change is the norm, not the exception

-Software engineering is different from other engineering disciplines|| — Summerville

- Not constrained by physical laws
 - limit = human mind
- It is constrained by political forces
 - balancing stake-holders

Software Development Life Cycle

- SDLC is a structure imposed on the development of a software product that defines the process for planning, implementation, testing, documentation, deployment, and ongoing maintenance and support. There are a number of different development models.
- A Software Development Life Cycle is essentially a series of steps, or phases, that provide a model for the development and lifecycle management of an application or piece of software.

TOPS Technologies

- The methodology within the SDLC process can vary across industries and organizations, but standards such as ISO/IEC 12207 represent processes that establish a lifecycle for software, and provide a mode for the development, acquisition, and configuration of software systems.

SDLC Phases

Requirements Collection/Gathering	Establish Customer Needs
Analysis	Model And Specify the requirements- -What
Design	Model And Specify a Solution – -Why
Implementation	Construct a Solution In Software
Testing	Validate the solution against the requirements
Maintenance	Repair defects and adapt the solution to the new requirements

Requirement Gathering

- Features
- Usage scenarios
- Although requirements may be documented in written form, they may be incomplete, unambiguous, or even incorrect.
- Requirements will Change!
- Inadequately captured or expressed in the first place
- User and business needs change during the project
- Validation is needed throughout the software lifecycle, not only when the –final system|| is delivered.
- Build constant feedback into the project plan
- Plan for change
- Early prototyping [e.g., UI] can help clarify the requirements
- Functional and Non-Functional
- Requirements definitions usually consist of **natural language**, supplemented by (e.g., UML) **diagrams and tables**.
- Three types of problems can arise:
 - Lack of clarity:** It is hard to write documents that are both **precise and easy-to-read**.
 - Requirements confusion:** Functional and Non-functional requirements tend to be intertwined.
 - Requirements Amalgamation:** Several **different requirements** may be expressed together.
- Types of Requirements:**
 - Functional Requirements:** describe system **services or functions**.
 - Compute sales tax on a purchase
 - Update the database on the server
 - Non-Functional Requirements:** are **constraints** on the system or the development process.

TOPS Technologies

- Non-functional requirements may be more critical than functional requirements.
- If these are not met, the system is useless!

Analysis Phase

- The analysis phase defines the requirements of the system, independent of how these Requirements will be accomplished.
- This phase defines the problem that the customer is trying to solve.
- The deliverable result at the end of this phase is a requirement document.
- Ideally, this document states in a clear and precise fashion what is to be built.
- This analysis represents the **-what**" phase.
- The requirement documentaries to capture the requirements from the customer's perspective by defining goals.
- This phase starts with the requirement document delivered by the requirement phase and maps the requirements into architecture.
- The architecture defines the components, their interfaces and behaviors.
- The deliverable design document is the architecture.
- This phase represents the **-how**" phase.
- Details on computer programming languages and environments, machines, packages, application architecture, distributed architecture layering, memory size, platform, algorithms, data structures, global type definitions, interfaces, and many other engineering details are established.
- The design may include the usage of existing components.

Design Phase

- Design Architecture Document
- Implementation Plan
- Critical Priority Analysis
- Performance Analysis
- Test Plan
- The Design team can now expand upon the information established in the requirement Document.
- The requirement document must guide this decision process.
- Analyzing the trade-offs of necessary complexity allows for many things to remain simple which, in turn, will eventually lead to a higher quality product. The architecture team also converts the typical scenarios into a test plan.

Implementation Phase

- In the implementation phase, the team builds the components either from scratch or by composition.
- Given the architecture document from the design phase and the requirement document from the analysis phase, the team should build exactly what has been requested, though

TOPS Technologies

there is still room for innovation and flexibility.

- For example, a component may be narrowly designed for this particular system, or the Component may be made more general to satisfy a reusability guideline.
 - Implementation - Code
 - Critical Error Removal
- The implementation phase deals with issues of quality, performance, baselines, libraries, and debugging.

The end deliverable is the product itself. There are already many established techniques associated with implementation.

Testing Phase

- Simply stated, quality is very important. Many companies have not learned that quality is important and deliver more claimed functionality but at a lower quality level.
- It is much easier to explain to a customer why there is a missing feature than to explain to a customer why the product lacks quality.
- A customer satisfied with the quality of a product will remain loyal and wait for new Functionality in the next version.
- Quality is a distinguishing attribute of a system indicating the degree of excellence.
- Regression Testing
- Internal Testing
- Unit Testing
- Application Testing
- Stress Testing
- The testing phase is a separate phase which is performed by a different team after the implementation is completed.
- There is merit in this approach; it is hard to see one's own mistakes, and a fresh eye can discover obvious errors much faster than the person who has read and re-read the material many times.
- Unfortunately, delegating (alternate) testing to another team leads to a lack (dull) attitude regarding quality by the implementation team.
- If the teams are to be known as craftsmen, then the teams should be responsible for establishing high quality across all phases.
- An attitude change must take place to guarantee quality. Regardless if testing is done after the-fact or continuously, testing is usually based on a regression technique split into several major focuses, namely internal, unit, application, and stress.

Maintenance Phase

- Software maintenance is one of the activities in software engineering, and is the process of enhancing and optimizing deployed software (software release), as well as fixing defects.
- Software maintenance is also one of the phases in the System Development Life Cycle (SDLC), as it applies to software development. The maintenance phase is the phase which comes after deployment of the software into the field.
- The developing organization or team will have some mechanism to document and track Defects and deficiencies.

- configuration and version management
- reengineering (redesigning and refactoring)
- updating all analysis, design and user documentation
- Repeatable, automated tests enable evolution and refactoring

Maintenance is the process of changing a system after it has been deployed.

Corrective maintenance:identifying and repairing defects

Adaptive maintenance: adapting the existing solution to the new platforms.

Perfective Maintenance: implementing the new requirements

In a spiral lifecycle, everything after the delivery and deployment of the first prototype can be considered -maintenance!!

- Software just like most other products is typically released with a known set of defects and deficiencies.

The software is released with the issues because the development organization decides the utility and value of the software at a particular level of quality outweighs the impact of the known Defects and deficiencies.

What is a data flow diagram (DFD)?

A Data Flow Diagram (DFD) is a traditional way to visualize the information flows within a system. A neat and clear DFD can depict a good amount of the system requirements graphically. It can be manual, automated, or a combination of both.

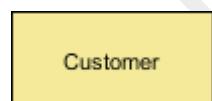
It shows how information enters and leaves the system, what changes the information and where information is stored. The purpose of a DFD is to show the scope and boundaries of a system as a whole. It may be used as a communications tool between a systems analyst and any person who plays a part in the system that acts as the starting point for redesigning a system.

DFD Diagram Notations

Now we'd like to briefly introduce to you a few diagram notations which you'll see in the tutorial below.

External Entity

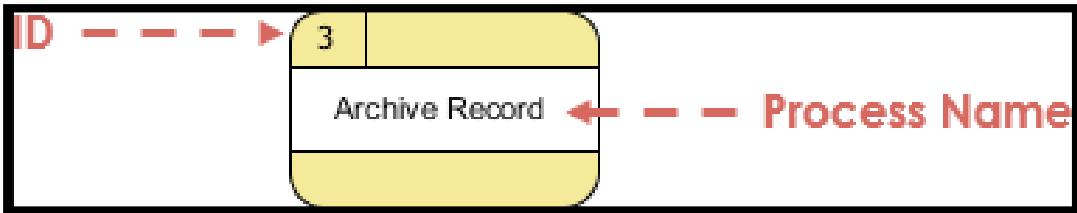
An external entity can represent a human, system or subsystem. It is where certain data comes from or goes to. It is external to the system we study, in terms of the business process. For this reason, people used to draw external entities on the edge of a diagram.



Process

A process is a business activity or function where the manipulation and transformation of data take place. A process can be decomposed to a finer level of details, for representing how data

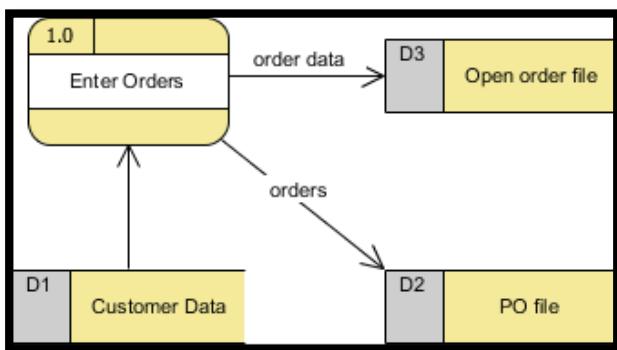
TOPS Technologies



is being processed within the process.

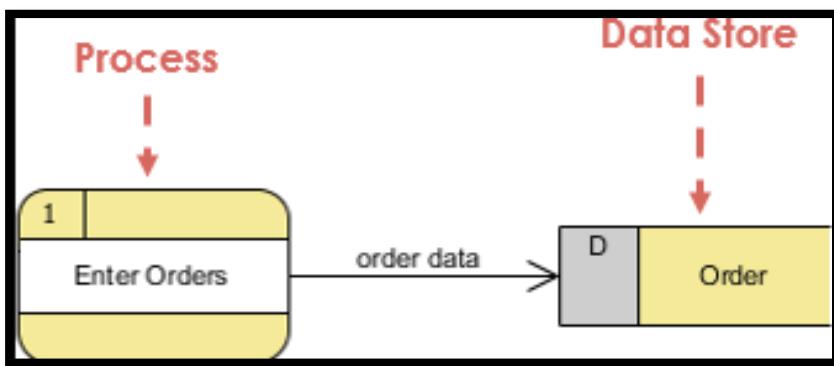
Data Store

A data store represents the storage of persistent data required and/or produced by the process. Here are some examples of data stores: membership forms, database tables, etc.

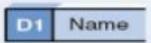
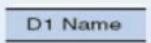
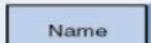


Data Flow

A data flow represents the flow of information, with its direction represented by an arrowhead that shows at the end(s) of flow connector.



Naming and Drawing DFD Elements

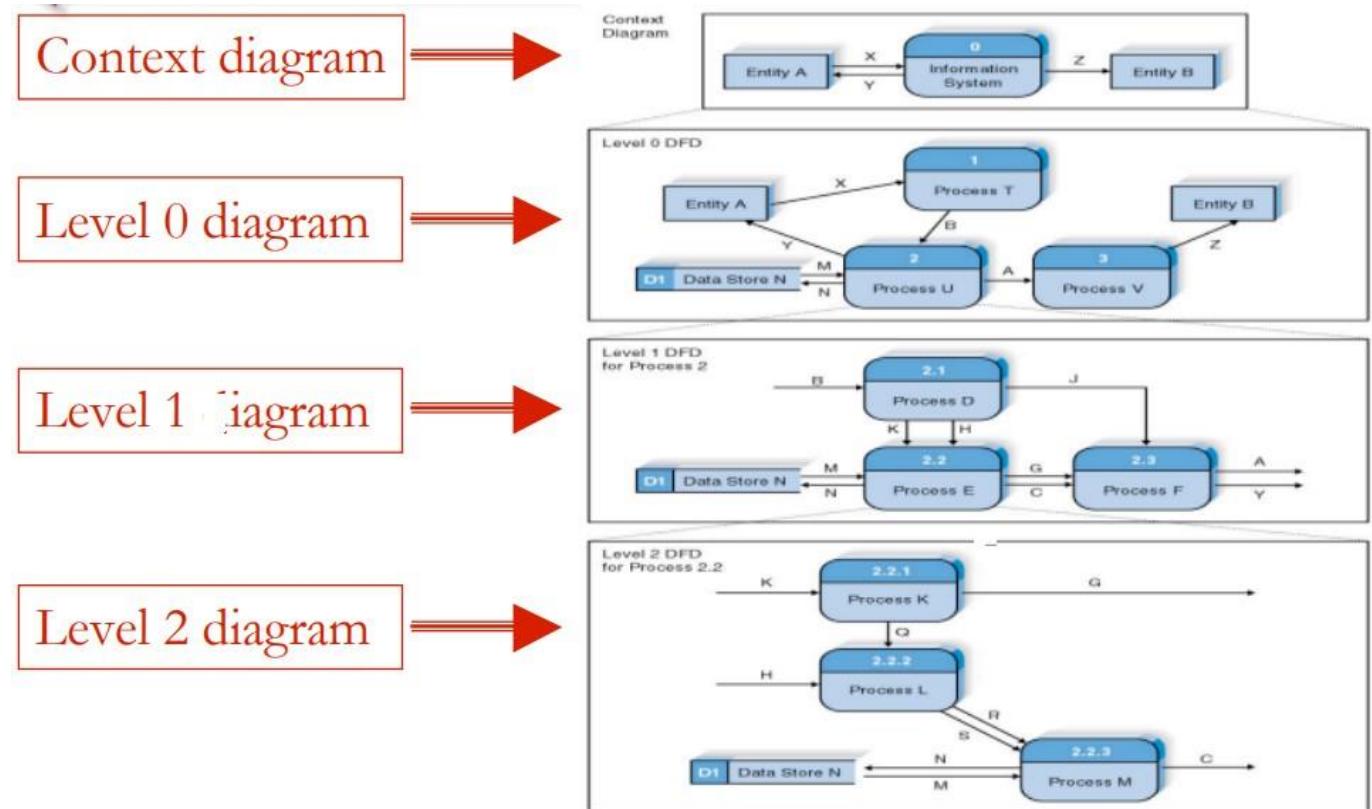
	Data Flow Diagram Element	Typical Computer-Aided Software Engineering Fields	Gane and Sarson Symbol	DeMarco and Yourdan Symbol
Process	Every process has A number A name (verb phase) A description One or more output data flows Usually one or more input data flows	Label (name) Type (process) Description (what is it) Process number Process description (Structured English) Notes		
Data flow	Every data flow has A name (a noun) A description One or more connections to a process	Label (name) Type (flow) Description Alias (another name) Composition (description of data elements) Notes		
Data store	Every data store has A number A name (a noun) A description One or more input data flows Usually one or more output data flows	Label (name) Type (store) Description Alias (another name) Composition (description of data elements) Notes		
External entity	Every external entity has A name (a noun) A description	Label (name) Type (entity) Description Alias (another name) Entity description Notes		

Here are some key points that apply to all DFDs.

- All the data flows are labelled and describe the information that is being carried.
- It tends to make the diagram easier to read if the processes are kept to the middle, the external entities to the left and the data stores appear on the right hand side of the diagram.
- The process names start with a strong verb
- Each process has access to all the information it needs. In the example above, process 4 is required to check orders. Although the case study has not been given, it is reasonable to suppose that the process is looking at a customer's order and checking that any order items correspond to ones that the company sell. In order to do this the process is reading data from the product data store.
- Each process should have an output. If there is no output then there is no point in having that process. A corollary of this is that there must be at least one input to a process as it cannot produce data but can only convert it from one form to another.
- Data stores should have at least one data flow reading from them and one data flow writing to them. If the data is never accessed there is a question as to whether it should be stored. In addition, there must be some way of accumulating data in the data store in the first place so it is unlikely there will be no writing to the data store.
- Data may flow from an External entity to process and vice-versa o Process to process o Process to data store and vice-versa
- No logical order is implied by the choice of id for the process. In the example process id's start at 4. There is no significance to this.

TOPS Technologies

Relationship among levels of DFD:

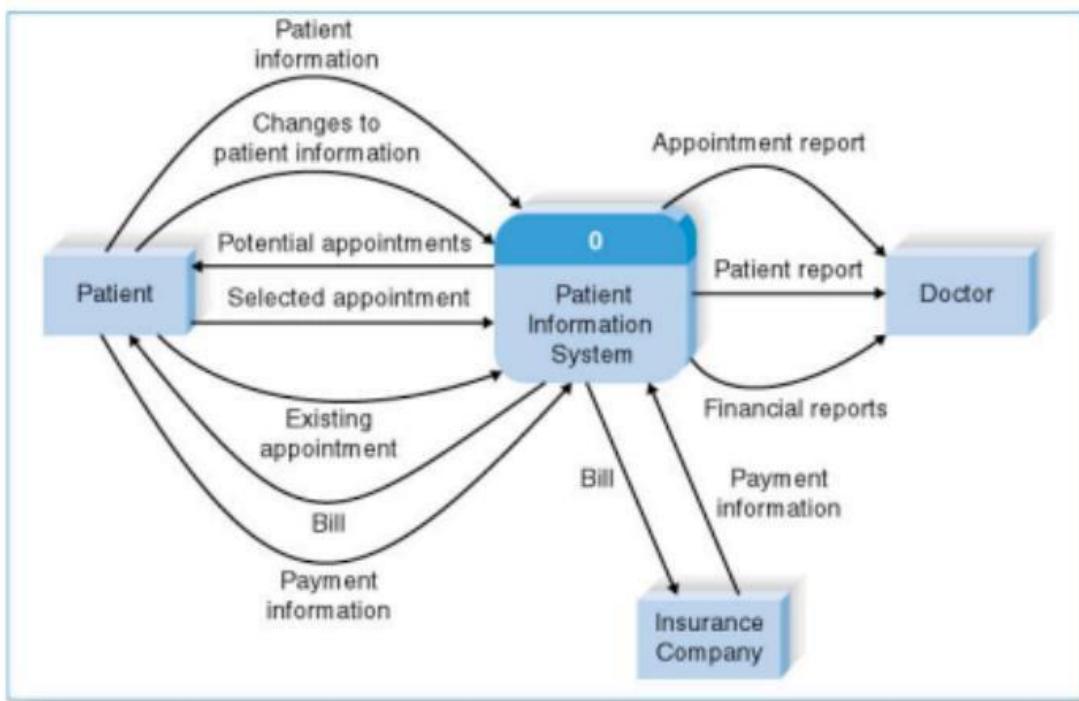


Context diagram:

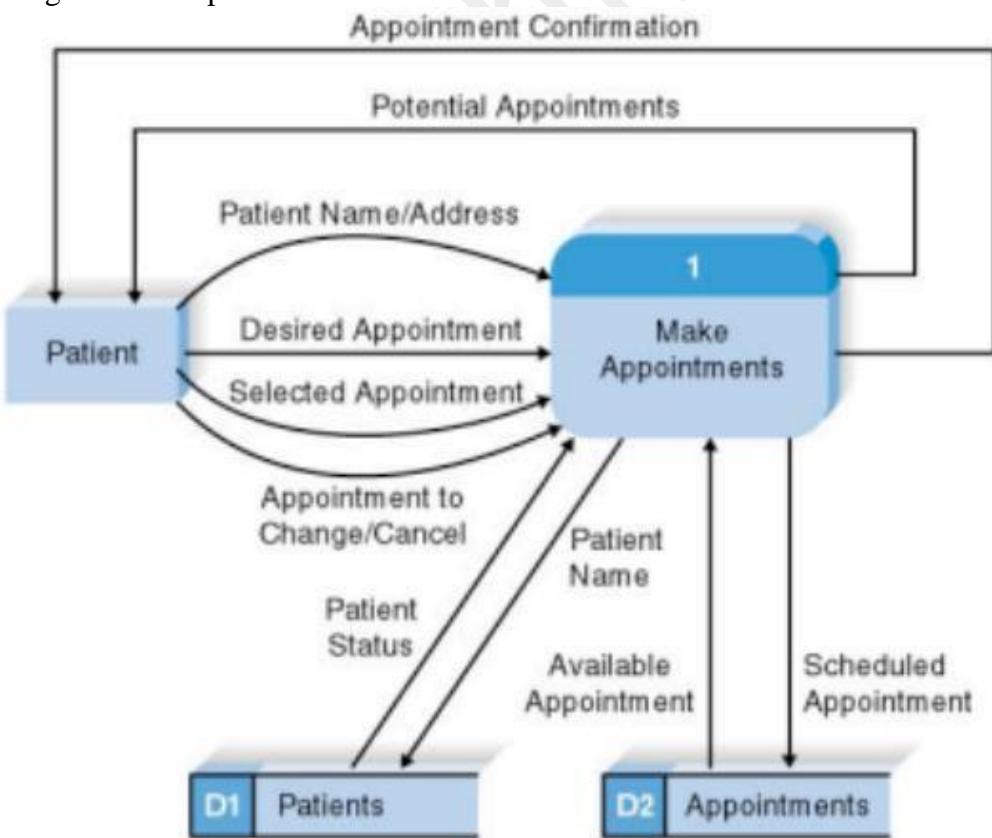
This DFD provides an overview of the data entering and leaving the system. It also shows the entities that are providing or receiving that data. These correspond usually to the people that are using the system we will develop. The context diagram helps to define our system boundary to show what is included in, and what is excluded from, our system. The diagram consists of a rectangle representing the system boundary, the external entities interacting with the system and the data which flows into and out of the system. Figure 9 gives an example of a context diagram.

TOPS Technologies

A level 0 DFD Example:



A DFD Fragment Example

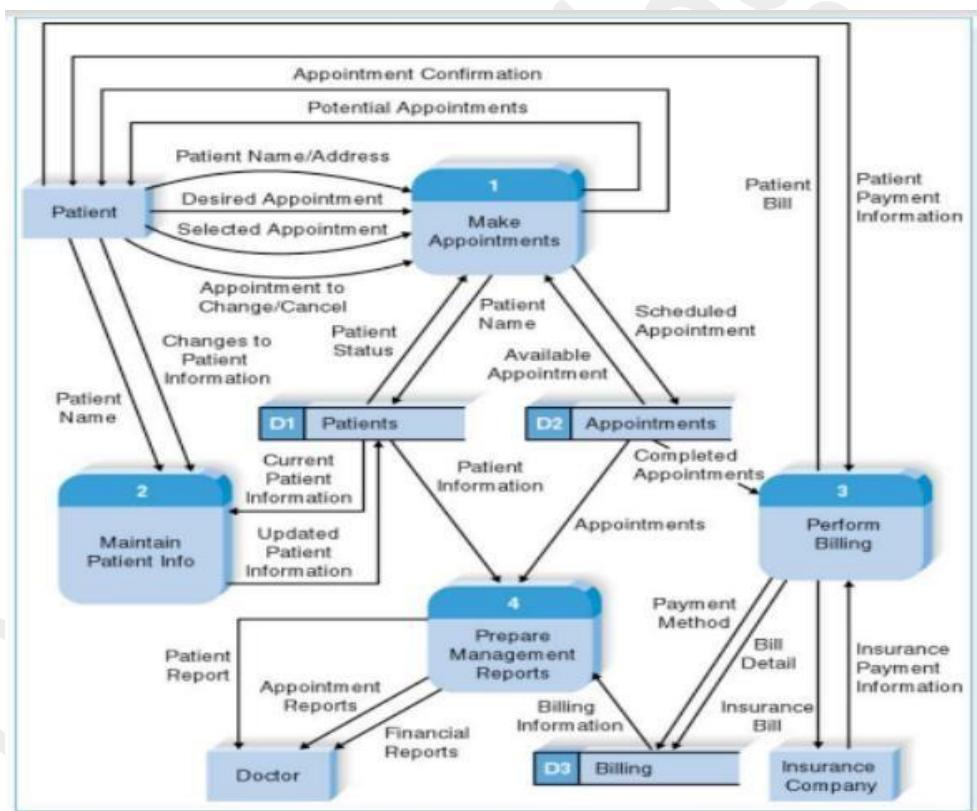


TOPS Technologies

DFD Level-1(or 2)

Include all entities and data stores that are directly connected by data flow to the one process you are breaking down show all other data stores that are shared by the processes in this breakdown.

The level 1 DFD we construct is a ‘child diagram’ of the context diagram. We should see all the inputs outputs and external entities that are present in the context diagram. This time we shall include processes and data stores. When students come to construct these level 1 DFDs for the first time they are often unsure as to how many processes to show. It somewhat depends on the case study. However, as a guide it is probable that you would not want more than eight or nine processes as more than this would make the diagram too cluttered. In addition the process names should be chosen so that there are at least three. Fewer than this would mean that the system was unrealistically simple. Below figure shows a level 1 DFD corresponding to the context diagram.



Exercise:

1. Food Ordering System
2. Customer Service System (Railway Company)
3. Supermarket App

Flow chart

A flow chart is a graphical or symbolic representation of a process. Each step in the process is represented by a different symbol and contains a short description of the process step. The flow chart symbols are linked together with arrows showing the process flow direction.

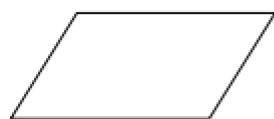
What is a flowchart?

A flowchart is a graphical representation of the operations involved in a data processing system.

- Symbols are used to represent particular operations or data.
- Flow lines indicate the sequence of operations (Top to down sequence).



Terminal (Start or Stop of program flow)



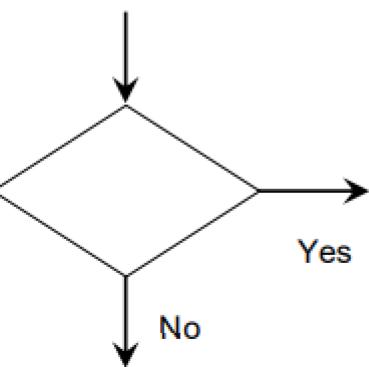
Input / Output operation



Connector



Process to be performed



Decision / Comparison Operation
Note that one arrow goes in, two go out.

Common Flowchart Symbols

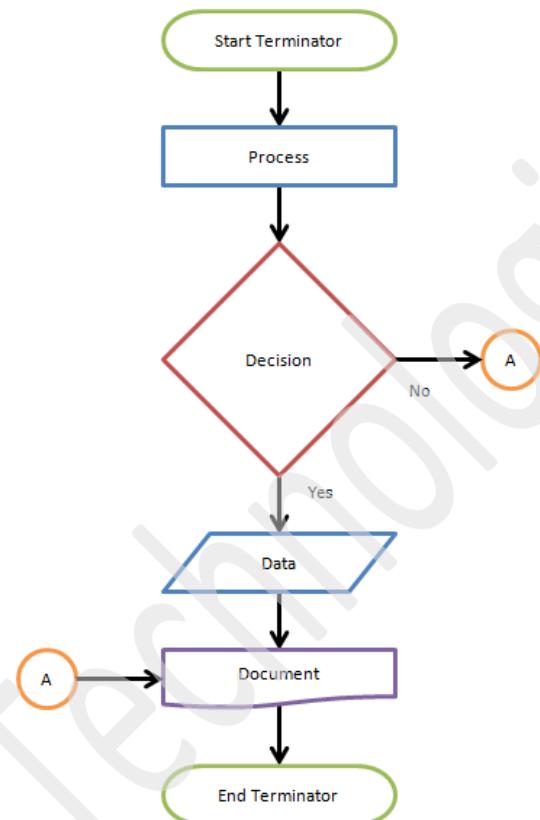
Different flow chart symbols have different meanings. The most common flow chart symbols are:

- **Terminator:** An oval flow chart shape indicating the start or end of the process.
- **Process:** A rectangular flow chart shape indicating a normal process flow step.
- **Decision:** A diamond flow chart shape indication a branch in the process flow.

TOPS Technologies

- **Connector:** A small, labeled, circular flow chart shape used to indicate a jump in the process flow. (Shown as the circle with the letter "A", below.)
- **Data:** A parallelogram that indicates data input or output (I/O) for a process.
- **Document:** Used to indicate a document or report (see image in sample flow chart below).

A simple flow chart showing the symbols described above can be seen below:

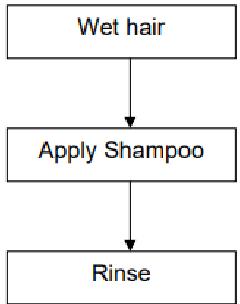
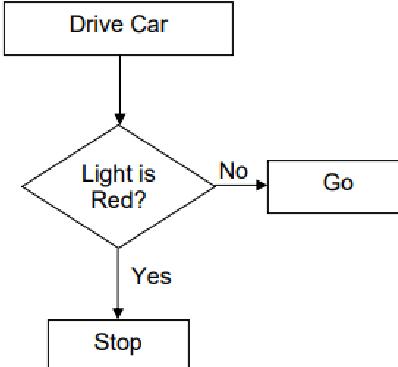
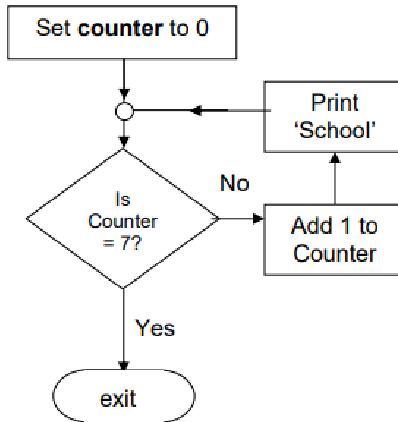


Programs can be in three format

1. Linear or sequential Structure
2. Branching or Decision Making Structure
3. Looping Structure

Following are description and notations can be used to show this format

TOPS Technologies

Sequential Structure A series of processes that follow in order. For example, to wash your hair; 1. Wet hair 2. Apply shampoo 3. Rinse	Decision Making Structure A condition exists that may change the order or types of processes to be followed. For example, IF the light is red THEN I will stop OTHERWISE I will go.	Looping Structure Often, we might wish to perform the same set of processes a number of times, we can perform a loop and do the same set of actions over and over until a STOPPING condition occurs. Failure to provide a STOP condition will cause the process to go into an INFINITE LOOP An example of a LOOP could be to display the word 'SCHOOL' on the screen 7 times.
 <pre> graph TD A[Wet hair] --> B[Apply Shampoo] B --> C[Rinse] </pre>	 <pre> graph TD A[Drive Car] --> B{Light is Red?} B -- No --> C[Go] B -- Yes --> D[Stop] </pre>	 <pre> graph TD A[Set counter to 0] --> B(()) B --> C{Is Counter = 7?} C -- No --> D[Add 1 to Counter] D --> E[Print 'School'] E --> B C -- Yes --> F(exit) </pre>

Exercise:

For each of the problems below, draw a flow chart;

1. Input the length L and the breadth B, calculate and output the area of a rectangle.
2. User inputs radius and flowchart calculates and shows the area of a circle
3. Print the number from 1 to 100 (Hint: use a counter & loop)
4. Enter 20 marks and print their average.
5. Ask a person for a number between 1 and 100, ask again if they give you a number outside that range
6. Input 40 marks. Count and print how many marks are below 50.
7. Input M and print the square of M if it is between 1 and 10. 8. Input a mark. Calculate and output a student's grade; $80 < A \leq 100$ $60 < B \leq 80$ $40 < C \leq 60$ $0 \leq U \leq 40$

Model Design with UML

Unified Modeling Language (UML) is a visual language for developing software blue prints (designs). A blue print or design represents the model. For example, while constructing

TOPS Technologies

buildings, a designer or architect develops the building blueprints. Similarly, we can also develop blue prints for a software system.

The main aim of UML is to define a standard way to visualize the way a system has been designed. It is quite similar to blueprints used in other fields of engineering.

UML is not a programming language, it is rather a visual language. We use UML diagrams to portray the behavior and structure of a system.

Model:

Model is a simplification of reality,

- A model may provide
 - Blueprint of a system
 - Organization of the system
 - Dynamic of the system

Three kinds of models describe a system from different viewpoints:

1. Class Model
2. State Model
3. Interaction Model

A complete description of a system requires models from all 3 viewpoints

What is Class?

A Class is a blueprint that is used to create Object. The Class defines what object can do.

What is a Class Diagram?

Class Diagram gives the static view of an application. A class diagram describes the types of objects in the system and the different types of relationships that exist among them. This modeling method can run with almost all Object-Oriented Methods. A class can refer to another class. A class can have its objects or may inherit from other classes.

A class diagram models the static structure of a system. It shows relationships between classes, objects, attributes, and operations.

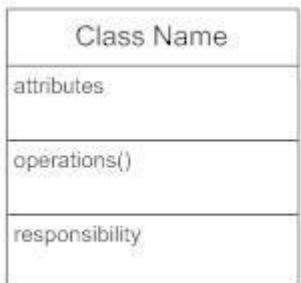
Basic Class Diagram Symbols and Notations

Classes

Classes represent an abstraction of entities with common characteristics. Associations represent the relationships between classes.

Illustrate classes with rectangles divided into compartments. Place the name of the class in the first partition (centered, bolded, and capitalized), list the attributes in the second partition (left-aligned, not bolded, and lowercase), and write operations into the third.

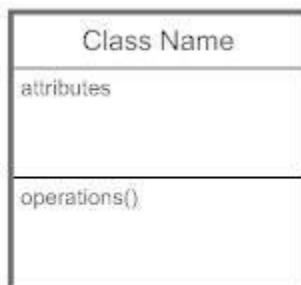
TOPS Technologies



Class

Active Classes

Active classes initiate and control the flow of activity, while passive classes store data and serve other classes. Illustrate active classes with a thicker border.



Active class

Visibility

Use visibility markers to signify who can access the information contained within a class. Private visibility, denoted with a - sign, hides information from anything outside the class partition. Public visibility, denoted with a + sign, allows all other classes to view the marked information. Protected visibility, denoted with a # sign, allows child classes to access information they inherited from a parent class.



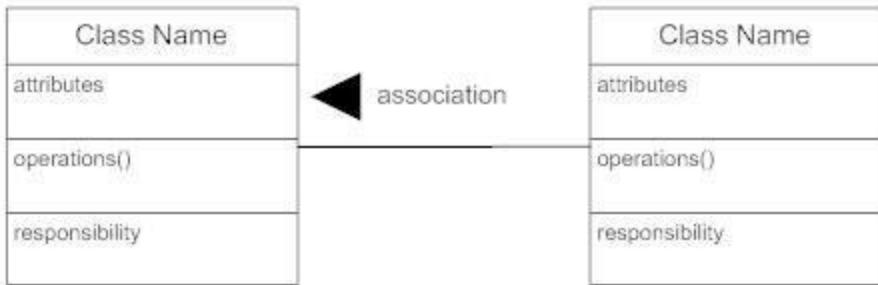
Visibility

Marker	Visibility
+	public
-	private
#	protected
-	package

Associations

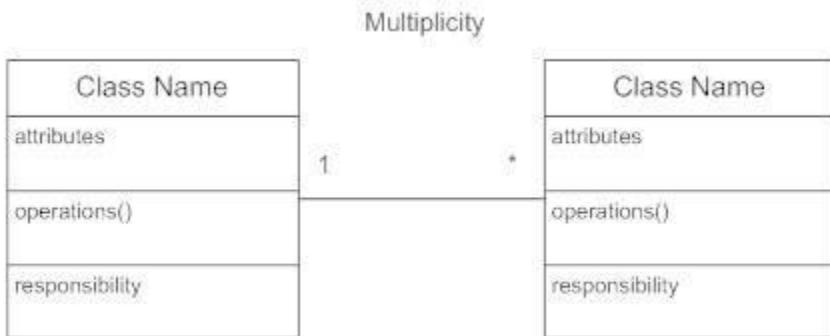
Associations represent static relationships between classes. Place association names above, on, or below the association line. Use a filled arrow to indicate the direction of the relationship. Place roles near the end of an association. Roles represent the way the two classes see each other.

TOPS Technologies



Multiplicity (Cardinality)

Place multiplicity notations near the ends of an association. These symbols indicate the number of instances of one class linked to one instance of the other class. For example, one company will have one or more employees, but each employee works for just one company.

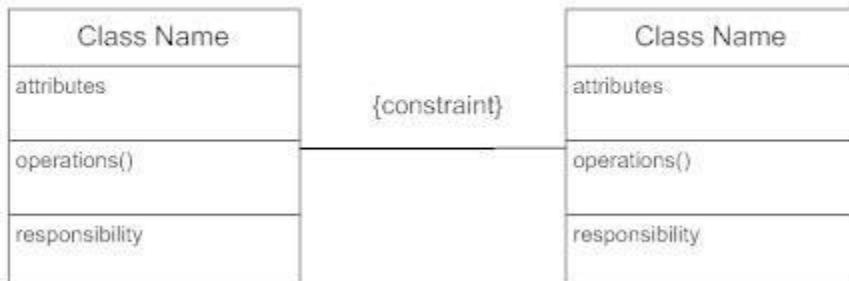


Indicator	Meaning
0..1	Zero or one
1	One only
0..*	0 or more
1..* *	1 or more
0..n	Only n (where n > 1)
0..n	Zero to n (where n > 1)
1..n	One to n (where n > 1)

Constraint

Place constraints inside curly braces {}.

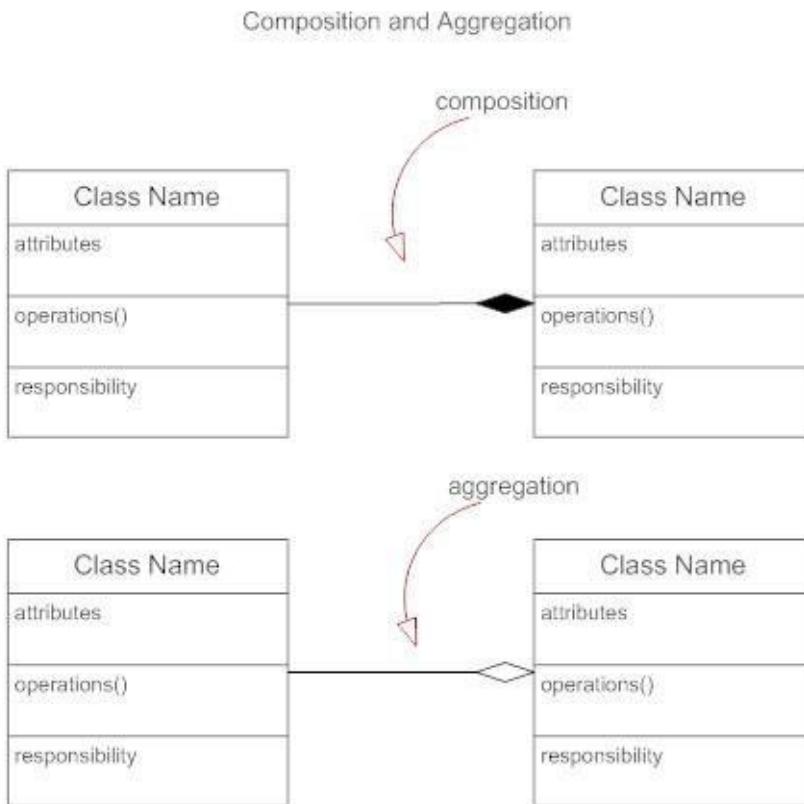
Constraint



Composition and Aggregation

TOPS Technologies

Composition is a special type of aggregation that denotes a strong ownership between Class A, the whole, and Class B, its part. Illustrate composition with a filled diamond. Use a hollow diamond to represent a simple aggregation relationship, in which the "whole" class plays a more important role than the "part" class, but the two classes are not dependent on each other. The diamond ends in both composition and aggregation relationships point toward the "whole" class (i.e., the aggregation).

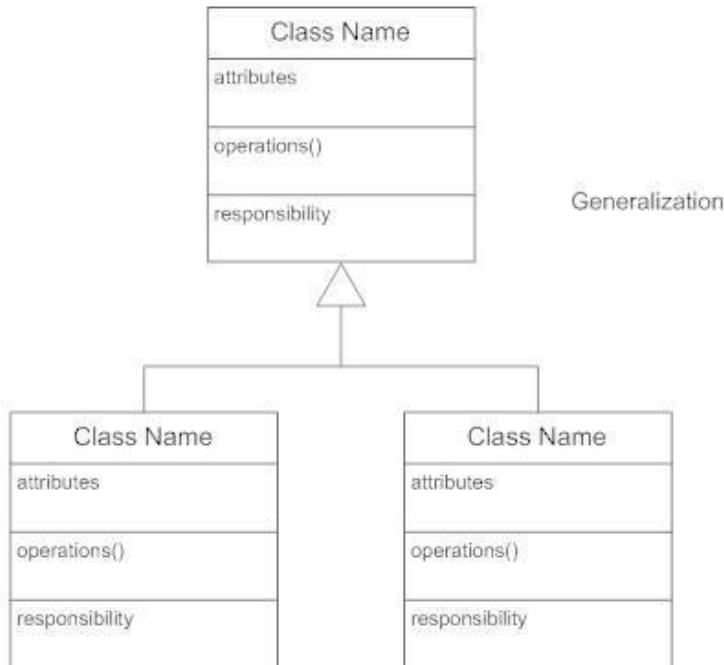


Generalization

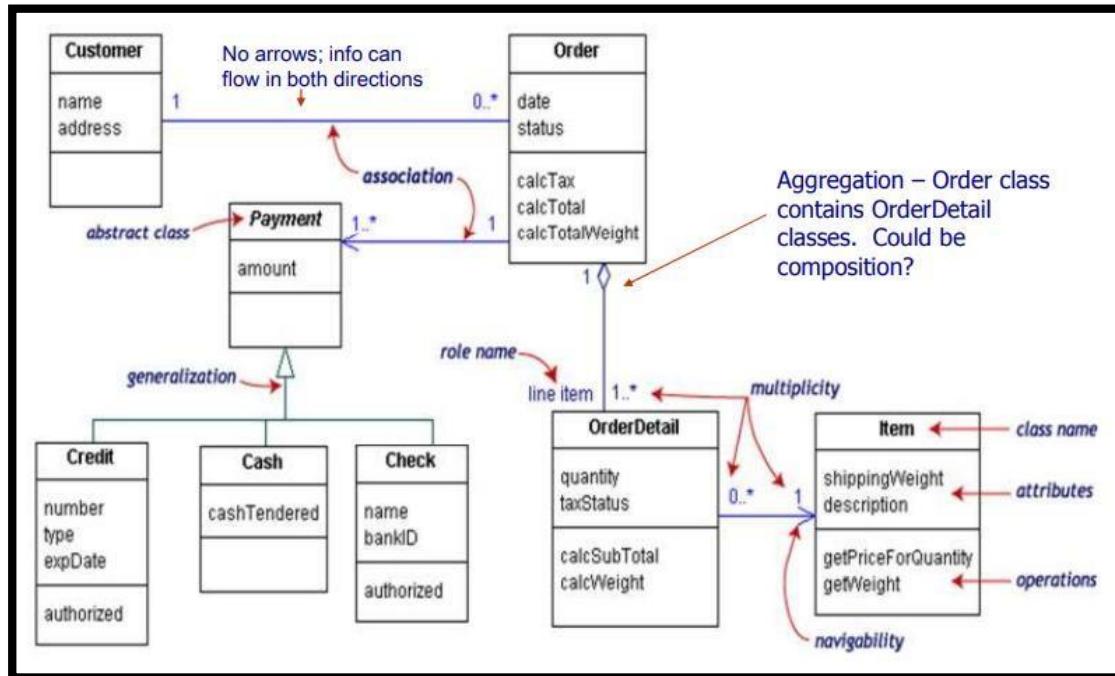
Generalization is another name for inheritance or an "is a" relationship. It refers to a relationship between two classes where one class is a specialized version of another. For example, Honda is a

TOPS Technologies

type of car. So the class Honda would have a generalization relationship with the class car.



Class diagram example



Class diagrams pros:

- discovering related data and attributes
- getting a quick picture of the important entities in a system
- seeing whether you have too few/many classes
- seeing whether the relationships between objects are too complex, too many in number,
Simple enough, etc.
- spotting dependencies between one class/object and another

Class diagrams cons:

- discovering algorithmic (not data-driven) behavior
- finding the flow of steps for objects to solve a given problem
- understanding the app's overall control flow (event-driven? web-based? sequential?
Etc.)

Class diagram example:

1. video store
2. Collage
3. Theater
4. Hospital management system

What is a State Diagram?

What is a State?

"A state is an abstraction of the attribute values and links of an object. Sets of values are grouped together into a state according to properties that affect the gross behavior of the object."

States: States represent situations during the life of an object. You can easily illustrate a state in Smart Draw by using a rectangle with rounded corners.

A state diagram shows the behavior of classes in response to external stimuli. Specifically a state diagram describes the behavior of a single object in response to a series of events in a system. Sometimes it's also known as a Harel state chart or a state machine diagram. This UML diagram models the dynamic flow of control from state to state of a particular object within a system.

Difference between state diagram and flowchart –

The basic purpose of a state diagram is to portray various changes in state of the class and not the processes or commands causing the changes. However, a flowchart on the other hand portrays the processes or commands that on execution change the state of class or an object of the class.

Basic components of a statechart diagram –

1. **Initial state** – We use a black filled circle represent the initial state of a System or a class.



Figure – initial state notation

2. **Transition** – We use a solid arrow to represent the transition or change of control from one state to another. The arrow is labelled with the event which causes the change in state.



Figure – transition

3. **State** – We use a rounded rectangle to represent a state. A state represents the conditions or circumstances of an object of a class at an instant of time.



Figure – state notation

TOPS Technologies

4. **Fork** – We use a rounded solid rectangular bar to represent a Fork notation with incoming arrow from the parent state and outgoing arrows towards the newly created states. We use the fork notation to represent a state splitting into two or more concurrent states.

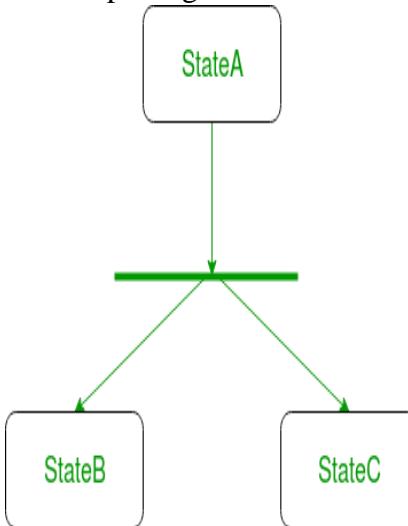


Figure – a diagram using the fork notation

5. **Join** – We use a rounded solid rectangular bar to represent a Join notation with incoming arrows from the joining states and outgoing arrow towards the common goal state. We use the join notation when two or more states concurrently converge into one on the occurrence of an event or events.

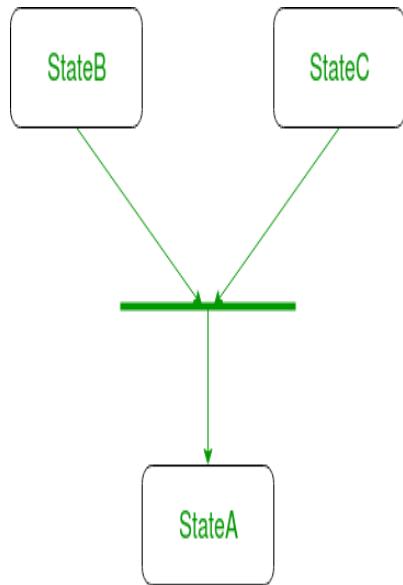
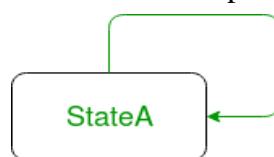


Figure – a diagram using join notation

6. **Self transition** – We use a solid arrow pointing back to the state itself to represent a self transition. There might be scenarios when the state of the object does not change upon the occurrence of an event. We use self transitions to represent such cases.



TOPS Technologies

Figure – self transition notation

7. **Composite state** – We use a rounded rectangle to represent a composite state also. We represent a state with internal activities using a composite state.

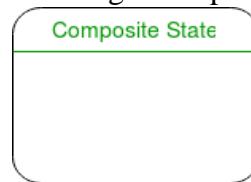


Figure – a state with internal activities

8. **Final state** – We use a filled circle within a circle notation to represent the final state in a state machine diagram.



Figure – final state notation

Steps to draw a state diagram –

1. Identify the initial state and the final terminating states.
2. Identify the possible states in which the object can exist (boundary values corresponding to different attributes guide us in identifying different states).
3. Label the events which trigger these transitions.

Example:

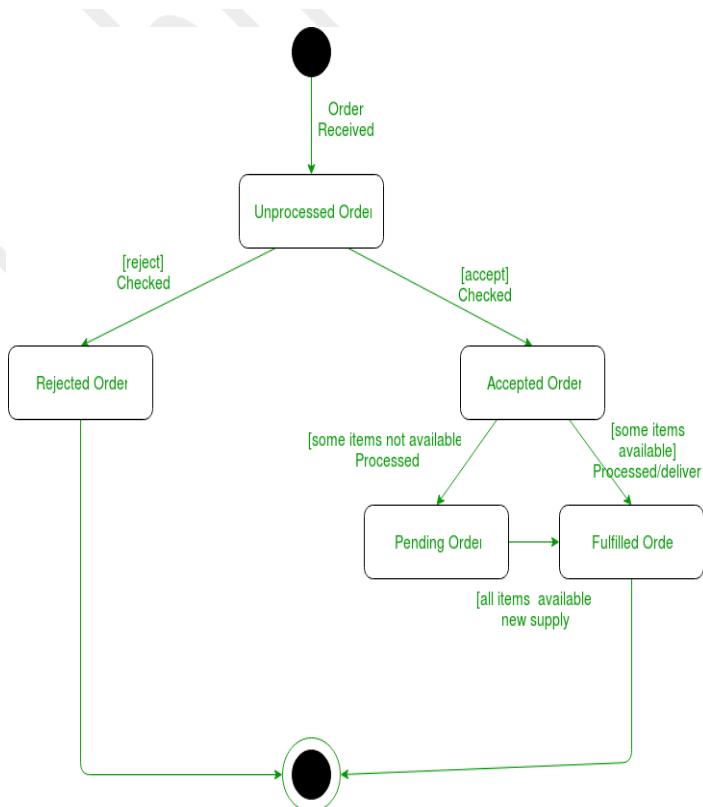
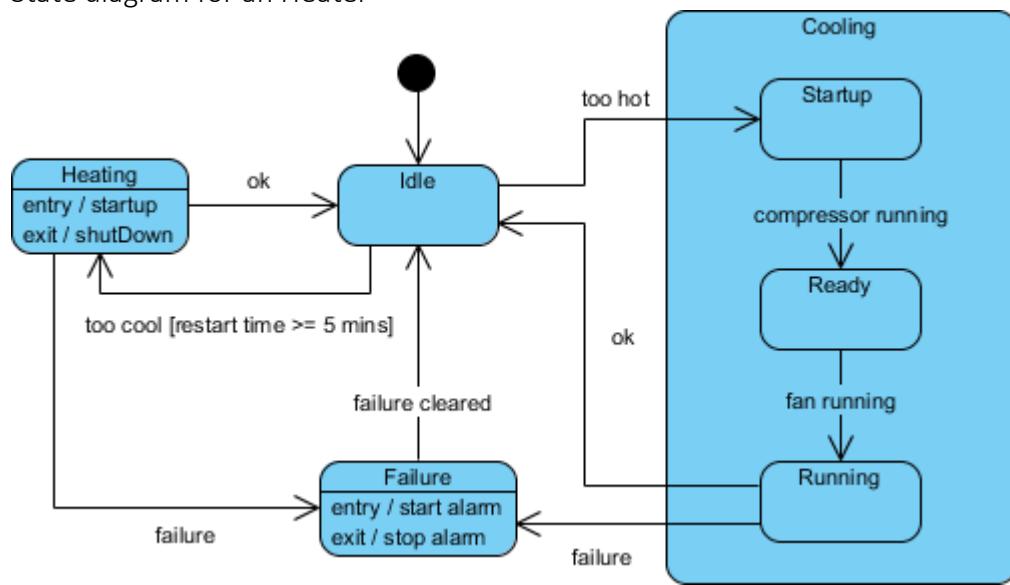


Figure – state diagram

State diagram for an online order –

TOPS Technologies

State diagram for an Heater



Interaction diagram –

An interaction diagram is used to show the **interactive behavior** of a system. Since visualizing the interactions in a system can be a cumbersome task, we use different types of interaction diagrams to capture various features and aspects of interaction in a system.

Interaction diagrams are designed to display how the objects will realize the particular requirements of a system.

Purposes:

The purposes of interaction diagrams are to visualize the interactive behavior of the system. Now visualizing interaction is a difficult task. So the solution is to use different types of models to capture the different aspects of the interaction. That is why sequence and collaboration diagrams are used to capture dynamic nature but from a different angle.

So the purposes of interaction diagram can be described as:

1. To capture dynamic behavior of a system.
2. To describe the message flow in the system.
3. To describe structural organization of the objects.
4. To describe interaction among objects.

Following things are to be identified clearly before drawing the interaction diagram

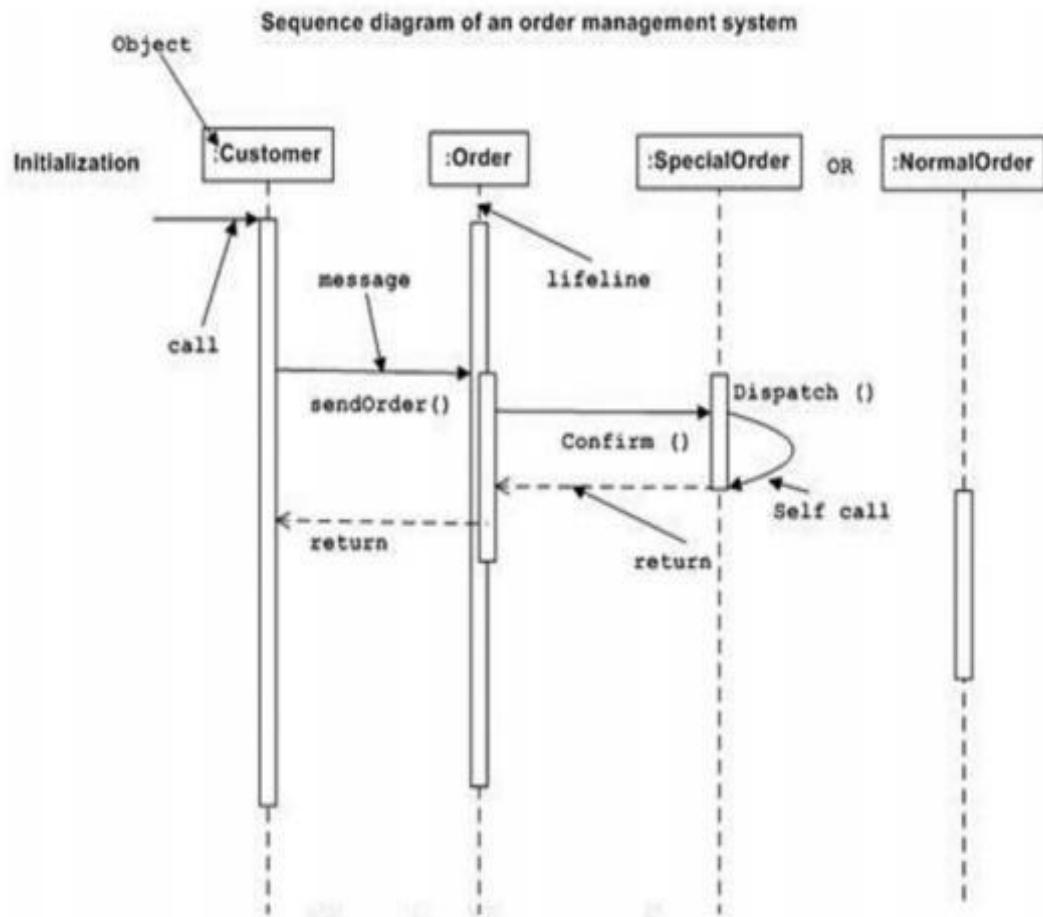
- Objects taking part in the interaction.
- Message flows among the objects.
- The sequence in which the messages are flowing.
- Object organization.

Following are the different types of interaction diagrams defined in UML:

- Sequence diagram
- Collaboration diagram
- Timing diagram
- Following are two interaction diagrams modeling order management system. The first diagram is a sequence diagram and the second is a collaboration diagram.

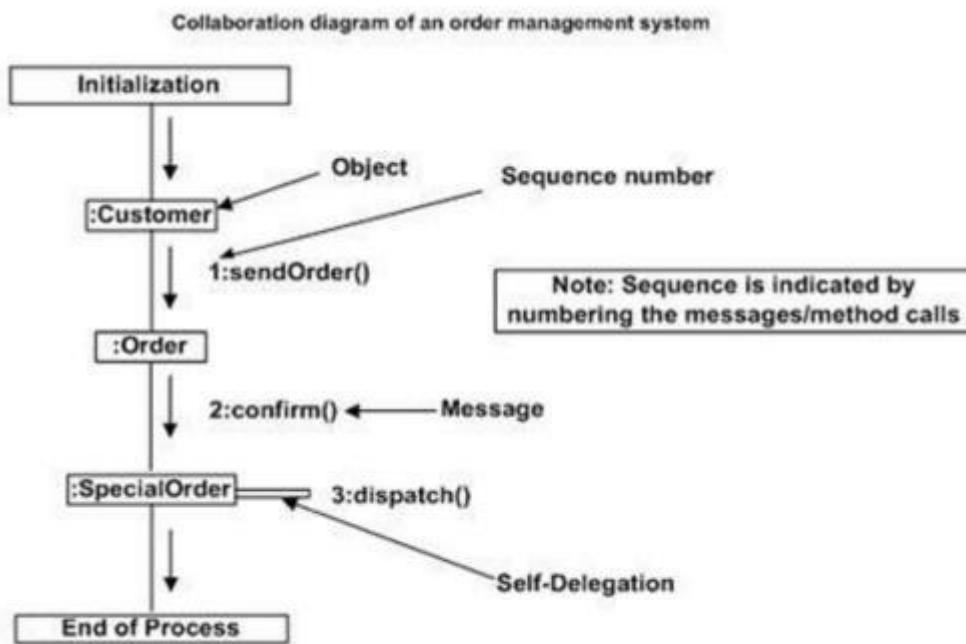
The Sequence Diagram:

- The sequence diagram is having four objects (Customer, Order, SpecialOrder and NormalOrder). The following diagram has shown the message sequence for SpecialOrder object and the same can be used in case of NormalOrder object. Now it is important to understand the time sequence of message flows. The message flow is nothing but a method call of an object. The first call is sendOrder () which is a method of Order object. The next call is confirm () which is a method of SpecialOrder object and the last call is Dispatch () which is a method of SpecialOrder object. So here the diagram is mainly describing the method calls from one object to another and this is also the actual scenario when the system is running.



The Collaboration Diagram:

- The second interaction diagram is collaboration diagram. It shows the object organization as shown below. Here in collaboration diagram the method call sequence is indicated by some numbering technique as shown below. The number indicates how the methods are called one after another. We have taken the same order management system to describe the collaboration diagram. The method calls are similar to that of a sequence diagram. But the difference is that the sequence diagram does not describe the object organization whereas the collaboration diagram shows the object organization. Now to choose between these two diagrams the main emphasis is given on the type of requirement. If the time sequence is important then sequence diagram is used and if organization is required then collaboration diagram is used.



Data Dictionary

A **Data Dictionary**, also called a **Data Definition Matrix**, provides detailed information about the business data, such as standard definitions of data elements, their meanings, and allowable values. While a conceptual or logical Entity Relationship Diagram will focus on the high-level business concepts, a Data Dictionary will provide more detail about each attribute of a business concept.

Data dictionary is referred to as meta-data. Meaning, it is a repository of data about data. It is a repository that contains description of all data objects consumed or produced by the system. These data objects are often stored in a spreadsheet, word processing tool or even a purpose built meta-data repository. A data dictionary can be created that defines data elements, including details such as names, aliases descriptions and allowable values, and including whether multiple values are permissible.

Let's look at the most common elements included in a data dictionary.

- **Attribute Name** – A unique identifier, typically expressed in business language, that labels each attribute.
- **Optional/Required** – Indicates whether information is required in an attribute before a record can be saved.
- **Attribute Type** – Defines what type of data is allowable in a field. Common types include text, numeric, date/time, enumerated list, look-ups, booleans, and unique identifiers.

Pros

1. May include many data attributes (e.g. list of values, default values, owner, etc.)
2. Includes detailed descriptions of each element (table, column)

TOPS Technologies

- 3. Easily searchable

Cons

- 1. Less visually appealing
- 2. More difficult to read

Example of a Data Dictionary

You are probably wondering how all of this comes together.

Here's a look at a simplified example data dictionary that contains the attribute from our *bridging the Gap* article example, along with critical information about each attribute.

Attribute Name	Required	Type	Field Length	Default Values	Notes
Article Title	Yes	Text	250	n/a	Can contain HTML.
Article Author	Yes	Look-Up	n/a	n/a	
Article Category	Yes	Look-Up	n/a	Uncategorized	
Article Content	No	Text	Unlimited	n/a	Can contain HTML.

Software Design Patterns

Design patterns are used to represent some of the best practices adapted by experienced object-oriented software developers. A design pattern systematically names, motivates, and explains a general design that addresses a recurring design problem in object-oriented systems. It describes the problem, the solution, when to apply the solution, and its consequences.

A design pattern provides a general reusable solution for the common problems occurs in software design. The patterns typically show relationships and interactions between classes or objects. The idea is to speed up the development process by providing well tested, proven development/design paradigm. Design patterns are programming language independent strategies for solving a common problem. That means a design pattern represents an idea, not a particular implementation. By using the design patterns you can make your code more flexible, reusable and maintainable.

Goal:

Understand the purpose and usage of each design patterns. So, you will be able to pick and implement the correct pattern as needed.

Example:

For example, in many real-world situations, we want to create only one instance of a class. For example, there can be only one active president of the country at a time regardless of personal identity. This pattern is called a Singleton pattern.

Other software examples could be a single DB connection shared by multiple objects as creating a separate DB connection for every object may be costly. Similarly, there can be a single configuration manager or error manager in an application that handles all problems instead of creating multiple managers.

Types of Design Patterns

There are mainly three types of design patterns:

1. Creational

these design patterns are all about class instantiation or object creation. These patterns can be further categorized into Class-creational patterns and object-creational patterns. While class-creation patterns use inheritance effectively in the instantiation process, object-creation patterns use delegation effectively to get the job done.

Creational design patterns are the Factory Method, Abstract Factory, Builder, Singleton, Object Pool, and Prototype.

Use case of creational design pattern-

1) Suppose a developer wants to create a simple DBConnection class to connect to a database and wants to access the database at multiple locations from code, generally what developer will do is create an instance of DBConnection class and use it for doing database operations wherever required. Which results in creating multiple connections from the database as each instance of DBConnection class will have a separate connection to the database. In order to deal with it, we create DBConnection class as a singleton class, so that only one instance of DBConnection is created and a single connection is established.

Because we can manage DB Connection via one instance so we can control load balance, unnecessary connections, etc.

2) Suppose you want to create multiple instances of similar kind and want to achieve loose coupling then you can go for Factory pattern. A class implementing factory design pattern works as a bridge between multiple classes. Consider an example of using multiple database servers like SQL Server and Oracle. If you are developing an application using SQL Server database as back end, but in future need to change database to oracle, you will need to modify all your code, so as factory design patterns maintain loose coupling and easy implementation we should go for factory for achieving loose coupling and creation of similar kind of object.

2. Structural

these design patterns are about organizing different classes and objects to form larger structures and provide new functionality.

TOPS Technologies

Structural design patterns are Adapter, Bridge, Composite, Decorator, Facade, Flyweight, Private Class Data, and Proxy.

Use Case of Structural Design Pattern-

- 1) When 2 interfaces are not compatible with each other and want to make establish a relationship between them through an adapter it's called adapter design pattern. Adapter pattern converts the interface of a class into another interface or classes the client expects that is adapter lets classes works together that could not otherwise because of incompatibility. So in these type of incompatible scenarios, we can go for the adapter pattern.

3. Behavioral

Behavioral patterns are about identifying common communication patterns between objects and realize these patterns.

Behavioral patterns are Chain of responsibility, Command, Interpreter, Iterator, Mediator, Memento, Null Object, Observer, State, Strategy, Template method, Visitor

Use Case of Behavioral Design Pattern-

- 1) Template pattern defines the skeleton of an algorithm in an operation deferring some steps to sub-classes, Template method lets subclasses redefine certain steps of an algorithm without changing the algorithm structure. Say for an example in your project you want the behavior of the module can be extended, such that we can make the module behave in new and different ways as the requirements of the application change, or to meet the needs of new applications. However, No one is allowed to make source code changes to it. It means you can add but can't modify the structure in those scenarios a developer can approach template design pattern.

TOPS Technologies

Module 2:

Web Programming

Scripting language, script language or extension language is a programming language that allows control of one or more software applications. "Scripts" are distinct from the core code of the application, which is usually written in a different language, and are often created or at least modified by the end-user. Scripts are often interpreted from source code or byte code, whereas the applications they control are traditionally compiled to native machine code. Scripting languages are nearly always embedded in the applications they control.

What is Website?

- Website – Every day you visit on internet
- Follows some rules & regulations i.e. client-server architecture standard
- Websites – providing information from anywhere in world

Website – basic parts

- Websites are consist of three parts
- GUI – web pages that you visit
- Coding – logic that provides functionality or makes website dynamic
- Database – manages data provided by end user
- For GUI building HTML is used from long time

CLIENTS AND SERVERS

- Web programming languages are usually classified as server-side or client-side. Some languages, such as JavaScript, can be used as both client-side and server-side languages, but most Web programming languages are server-side languages.
- The client is the Web browser, so client-side scripting uses a Web browser to run scripts. The same script may produce different effects when different browsers run it.
- A Web server is a combination of software and hardware that outputs Web pages after receiving a request from a client. Server-side scripting takes place on the server. If you look at the source of a page created from a server-side script, you'll see only the HTML code the script has generated. The source code for the script is on the server and doesn't need to be downloaded with the page that's sent back to the client.
- **Example of Web Programming Language**
 - PHP
 - ASP
 - Perl
 - JAVA

Difference between CLIENTS AND SERVERS

BASIS FOR COMPARISON	SERVER-SIDE SCRIPTING	CLIENT-SIDE SCRIPTING
Basic	Works in the back end which could not be visible at the client end.	Works at the front end and script are visible among the users.
Processing	Requires server interaction.	Does not need interaction with the server.
Languages involved	PHP, ASP.net, Ruby on Rails, ColdFusion, Python, etcetera.	HTML, CSS, JavaScript, etc.
Affect	Could effectively customize the web pages and provide dynamic websites.	Can reduce the load to the server.
Security	Relatively secure.	Insecure

Web browsers

Main article: Client-side scripting

Web browsers are applications for displaying web pages. A host of special-purpose languages has developed to control their operation. These include JavaScript, a scripting language superficially resembling Java; VBScript by Microsoft, which only works in Internet Explorer; XUL by the Mozilla project, which only works in Firefox; and XSLT, a presentation language that transforms XML content into a new form. This are the example of web browser (Chrome, Edge, Firefox, and Safari)

Browser	Vendor
Internet Explorer	Microsoft
Google Chrome	Google
Mozilla Firefox	Mozilla
Netscape Navigator	Netscape Communications Corp.
Opera	Opera Software
Safari	Apple

Web servers

Main article: Server-side scripting

On the server side of the HTTP link, application servers and other dynamic content servers such as Web content management systems provide content through a large variety of techniques and technologies typified by the scripting approach.

Understanding the Web Page and Home Page

Web page is a document available on World Wide Web. Web Pages are stored on web server and can be viewed using a web browser.

A web page can contain huge information including text, graphics, audio, video and hyperlinks. These hyperlinks are the link to other web pages.

Web site contain the many pages that's called Web Page. Web page contain the information related to our business that user can read easily and from that he can get best experience.

Home Page

When we open any kind of web site that show the first page and it contain all web pages links and it also show the primary contain in a page.

Web Designing

Web design is a **Web** development process for creating a **website** that focuses on aesthetic factors like layout, user interface and other visual imagery in order to make the **website** more visually appealing and easy to use.

Web design refers to the design of websites that are displayed on the internet. It usually refers to the user experience aspects of website development rather than software development. Web design used to be focused on designing websites for desktop browsers

A web designer works on the appearance, layout, and, in some cases, content of a website. Appearance, for instance, relates to the colors, font, and images used. Layout refers to *how* information is structured and categorized. A good web design is easy to use, aesthetically pleasing, and suits the user group and brand of the website. Many webpages are designed with a focus on simplicity, so that no extraneous information and functionality that might distract or confuse users appears. As the keystone of a web designer's output is a site that wins and fosters the trust of the target audience, removing as many potential points of user frustration as possible is a critical consideration.

TOPS Technologies

Two of the most common methods for designing websites that work well both on desktop and mobile are

1. Responsive design, content *moves dynamically* depending on screen size.
2. Adaptive design, the website content is *fixed* in layout sizes that match common screen sizes.

WWW stands for **World Wide Web**.

A technical definition of the World Wide Web is all the resources and users on the Internet that are using the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP).

Internet and **Web** is not the same thing: Web uses internet to pass over the information. The World Wide Web is the universe of network-accessible information, an embodiment of human knowledge.

In simple terms, The World Wide Web is a way of exchanging information between computers on the Internet, tying them together into a vast collection of interactive multimedia resources.

Introduction to HTML

- HTML, which stands for Hyper Text Markup Language, is the predominant markup language for web pages.
- It provides a means to create structured documents by denoting structural semantics for text such as headings, paragraphs, lists etc as well as for links, quotes, and other items.
- It allows images and objects to be embedded and can be used to create interactive forms.
- It is written in the form of HTML elements consisting of "tags" surrounded by angle brackets within the web page content.
- It can include or can load scripts in languages such as JavaScript which affect the behavior of HTML processors like Web browsers; and Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) to define the appearance and layout of text and other material.
- The W3C, maintainer of both HTML and CSS standards, encourages the use of CSS over explicit presentational markup
- HTML is the encoding scheme used to create and format a web document.

What is an HTML File?

- An HTML file is a text file containing small markup tags
- The markup tags tell the Web browser how to display the page
- An HTML file must have an htm or html file extension
- An HTML file can be created using a simple text editor

HTML Versions

VERSION	YEAR
HTML	1991
HTML 2.0	1995
HTML 3.0	1997

TOPS Technologies

HTML 4.01	1999
XHTML	2000
HTML5	2014

Structure of HTML Program:

```
<html>
<head>
<title>Page
Title</title>
</head>
<body>
    My First Program
</body>
</html>
```

Explaining all above tags:

- 1) The <html> element is the root element of an HTML page
- 2) The <head> element contains meta information about the document
- 3) The <title> element specifies a title for the document
- 4) The </title> Closes the title. The forward slash (/) in front of the HTML element means that command is now canceled.
- 5) The </head> Closes the head section.
- 6) The <body> element contains the visible page content
- 7) The </body> Closes the body section
- 8) The </html> Closes the html element, end of page.
- 9) For comment: <!--This can be viewed in the HTML part of a document-->

HTML Tag List

HTML tags are used for design your web page. There are so many tags are available in HTML.

For Ex:

<p>: Used for creating paragraph.
: Used for create unordered List.
: Used for create item list.
: Used for creating ordered list.
: Used for making font in bold.
<i>: Used for making font in italic.
: Used for inserting image in web form.
<a>: Used for creating hyperlink. and So on.

HTML Headings

HTML headings are defined with the `<h1>` to `<h6>` tags.

`<h1>` defines the most important heading. `<h6>` defines the least important heading:

Example:

```
<html>
<body>

<h1>This is heading 1</h1>
<h2>This is heading 2</h2>
<h3>This is heading 3</h3>
<h4>This is heading 4</h4>
<h5>This is heading 5</h5>
<h6>This is heading 6</h6>

</body>
</html>
```

Output:

This is heading 1

This is heading 2

This is heading 3

This is heading 4

This is heading 5

This is heading 6

HTML Anchor Tag

- HTML Anchor tag is used for creating hyperlink.

Example:

```
<html>
<body>

<h2>HTML Links</h2>
<p>HTML links are defined with the a tag:</p>

<a href="https://www.tops-int.com/">Go to
tops technologies</a>

</body>
</html>
```

Output:

HTML Links

HTML links are defined with the a tag:

[Go to tops technologies](https://www.tops-int.com/)

- In above example, if we have to create one link Registration.
- In <a> tag we use href. In Href we have to write the name of page when we have to redirect.
- So, if user clicks on this link then he is redirect on tops technologies page.

HTML Images

- In HTML Images are used for inserting image in our web page.
For inserting Image we have to used Tag

Example:

```
<html>
<body>

<h2>HTML Images</h2>
<p>HTML images are defined with the img tag:</p>



</body>
</html>
```

Output:



- In above example, if we have to Insert image in our webpage
- In tag we use src. In src we have to write o select the path of image where image stored in our computer.
- We also set the height and width of image using height and width property of tag.

HTML List

All lists must contain one or more list elements. Lists may contain:

1. Unordered information.
 2. Ordered information.
 3. Description
- In HTML and tags are used for creating list in our webpage.

 tag is used for create unordered list.

Example:

```
<html>
<body>

<h2>An unordered HTML list</h2>

<ul>
<li>PHP</li>
<li>JAVA</li>
<li>PYTHON</li>
</ul>

</body>
</html>
```

Output:

An unordered HTML list

- PHP
- JAVA
- PYTHON

Ordered list:

An ordered list starts with the `` tag. Each list item starts with the `` tag.

Example:

```
<html>
<body>

<h2>An ordered HTML list</h2>

<ol>
<li>PHP</li>
<li>JAVA</li>
<li>PYTHON</li>
</ol>

</body>
</html>
```

Output:

An ordered HTML list

1. PHP
2. JAVA
3. PYTHON

Description Lists

HTML also supports description lists.

A description list is a list of terms, with a description of each term.

The `<dl>` tag defines the description list, the `<dt>` tag defines the term (name), and the `<dd>` tag describes each term:

Example:

```
<html>
<body>

<h2>A Description List</h2>

<dl>
<dt>PHP</dt>
<dd>- Php is backend language</dd>
<dt>HTML</dt>
<dd>- Html is frontend language</dd>
</dl>

</body>
</html>
```

Output:

A Description List

PHP

- Php is backend language

HTML

- Html is frontend language

HTML Table

- Table is collection of Row and Column we design content in table format -

The `<table>` tag defines an HTML table.

Each table row is defined with a `<tr>` tag. Each table header is defined with a `<th>` tag. Each table data/cell is defined with a `<td>` tag.

By default, the text in `<th>` elements are bold and centered.

By default, the text in `<td>` elements are regular and left-aligned.

TOPS Technologies

Example:

```
<html>
<head>
<style>
table, th, td {
    border: 1px solid black;
    border-collapse: collapse;
}
th, td {
    padding: 15px;
}
</style>
</head>
<body>

<h2>Table</h2>

<table style="width:100%">
<tr>
<th>Firstname</th>
<th>Lastname</th>
<th>Age</th>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jill</td>
<td>Smith</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eve</td>
<td>Jackson</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>Doe</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</table>

</body>
</html>
```

Output:

TOPS Technologies

Table

Firstname	Lastname	Age
Jill	Smith	50
Eve	Jackson	94
John	Doe	80

HTML Table - Cell that Span Many Columns

To make a cell span more than one column, use the colspan attribute:

Example:

```
<html>
  <head>
    <style>
      table, th, td {
        border: 1px solid black;
        border-collapse: collapse;
      }
      th, td {
        padding: 5px;
        text-align: left;
      }
    </style>
  </head>
  <body>

    <h2>Cell that spans two
    columns</h2>
    <p>To make a cell span more than
    one column, use the colspan
    attribute.</p>
```

```
<table style="width:100%">  
    <tr>  
        <th>Name</th>  
        <th colspan="2">Telephone</th>  
    </tr>  
    <tr>  
        <td>Bill Gates</td>  
        <td>55577854</td>  
        <td>55577855</td>  
    </tr>  
</table>  
  
</body>  
</html>
```

Output:

Cell that spans two columns

To make a cell span more than one column, use the colspan attribute.

Name	Telephone	
Bill Gates	55577854	55577855

HTML Table - Cell that Span Many Rows

To make a cell span more than one row, use the rowspan attribute:

Example:

```
<html>
<head>
<style>
table, th, td {
    border: 1px solid black;
    border-collapse: collapse;
}
th, td {
    padding: 5px;
    text-align: left;
}
</style>
</head>
<body>

<h2>Cell that spans two rows</h2>
<p>To make a cell span more than one row, use the rowspan attribute.</p>
<table style="width:100%">
<tr>
<th>Name:</th>
<td>Bill Gates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<th rowspan="2">Telephone:</th>
<td>55577854</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55577855</td>
</tr>
</table>
</body>
</html>
```

Output:

Cell that spans two rows

To make a cell span more than one row, use the rowspan attribute.

Name:	Bill Gates
Telephone:	55577854 55577855

TOPS Technologies

Intro to HTML Forms

- Types of input we can collect via forms:
- Text via text boxes and text areas
- Selections via radio buttons, check boxes, pull down menus, and select boxes
- Form actions do all of the work
- Usually through button clicks

Form Actions

```
<form name="input" action="html_form_action.php method="get">
    • Action specifies what file the form data will be sent to (on the server)
    • Method specifies by which HTTP protocol
    • get
    • post
    • Method is important on the receiving end
```

Example:

```
<html>
<body>

<h1>Form</h1>

<form action="/action_page.php"
method="get">
    <label for="fname">First name:</label>
    <input type="text" id="fname"
name="fname"><br><br>
    <label for="lname">Last name:</label>
    <input type="text" id="lname"
name="lname"><br><br>
    <button type="submit">Submit</button>
    <button type="submit"
formaction="/action_page2.php">Submit
to another page</button>
</form>

</body>
</html>
```

Output:

Form

First name:

Last name:

Introduction to HTML5

HTML stands for Hyper Text Markup Language. It is used to design web pages using markup language. HTML is the combination of Hypertext and Markup language. Hypertext defines the link between the web pages. Markup language is used to define the text document within tag which defines the structure of web pages. HTML 5 is the fifth and current version of HTML. It has improved the markup available for documents and has introduced application programming interfaces(API) and Document Object Model(DOM).

Features:

- It has introduced new multimedia features which supports audio and video controls by using <audio> and <video> tags.
- There are new graphics elements including vector graphics and tags.
- Enrich semantic content by including <header> <footer>, <article>, <section> and <figure> are added.
- Drag and Drop- The user can grab an object and drag it further dropping it on a new location.
- Geo-location services- It helps to locate the geographical location of a client.
- Web storage facility which provides web application methods to store data on web browser.
- Uses SQL database to store data offline.
- Allows to draw various shapes like triangle, rectangle, circle, etc.
- Capable of handling incorrect syntax.
- Easy DOCTYPE declaration i.e. <!doctype html>
- Easy character encoding i.e. <meta charset="UTF-8">

Removed elements from HTML 5: There are many elements which are depreciated from HTML 5 are listed below:

REMOVED ELEMENTS	USE INSTEAD ELEMENTS
<acronym>	<abbr>
<applet>	<object>
<basefont>	CSS
<big>	CSS
<center>	CSS

TOPS Technologies

REMOVED ELEMENTS	USE INSTEAD ELEMENTS
<dir>	
	CSS
<frame>	
<frameset>	
<noframes>	
<isindex>	
<strike>	CSS, <s> or
<tt>	CSS

New Added Elements in HTML 5:

- **<article>**: The <article> tag is used to represent an article. More specifically, the content within the <article> tag is independent from the other content of the site (even though it can be related).
- **<aside>**: The <aside> tag is used to describe the main object of the web page in a shorter way like a highlighter. It basically identifies the content that is related to the primary content of the web page but does not constitute the main intent of the primary page. The <aside> tag contains mainly author information, links, related content and so on.
- **<figcaption>**: The <figurecaption> tag in HTML is used to set a caption to the figure element in a document.
- **<figure>**: The <figure> tag in HTML is used to add self-contained content like illustrations, diagrams, photos or codes listing in a document. It is related to main flow but it can be used in any position of a document and the figure goes with the flow of the document and if remove it then it should not affect the flow of the document.
- **<header>**: It contains the section heading as well as other content, such as a navigation links, table of contents, etc.
- **<footer>**: The <footer> tag in HTML is used to define a footer of HTML document. This section contains the footer information (author information, copyright information, carriers etc). The footer tag are used within body tag. The <footer> tag is new in the HTML 5. The footer elements require a start tag as well as an end tag.
- **<main>**: Delineates the main content of the body of a document or web app.
- **<mark>**: The <mark> tag in HTML is used to define the marked text. It is used to highlight the part of the text in the paragraph.

TOPS Technologies

- **<nav>**: The <nav> tag is used to declare the navigational section in HTML documents. Websites typically have sections dedicated to navigational links, which enables user to navigate the site. These links can be placed inside a nav tag.
- **<section>**: It demarcates a thematic grouping of content.
- **<details>**: The <details> tag is used for the content/information which is initially hidden but could be displayed if the user wishes to see it. This tag is used to create interactive widget which user can open or close it. The content of details tag is visible when open the set attributes.
- **<summary>**: The <summary> tag in HTML is used to define a summary for the <details> element. The <summary> element is used along with the <details> element and provides a summary visible to the user. When the summary is clicked by the user, the content placed inside the <details> element becomes visible which was previously hidden. The <summary> tag was added in HTML 5. The <summary> tag requires both starting and ending tag.
- **<time>**: The <time> tag is used to display the human-readable date/time. It can also be used to encode dates and times in a machine-readable form. The main advantage for users is that they can offer to add birthday reminders or scheduled events in their calendar's and search engines can produce smarter search results.
- **<bdi>**: The <bdi> tag refers to the Bi-Directional Isolation. It differentiates a text from other text that may be formatted in different direction. This tag is used when a user generated text with an unknown direction.
- **<wbr>**: The <wbr> tag in HTML stands for word break opportunity and is used to define the position within the text which is treated as a line break by the browser. It is mostly used when the used word is too long and there are chances that the browser may break lines at the wrong place for fitting the text.
- **<datalist>**: The <datalist> tag is used to provide autocomplete feature in the HTML files. It can be used with input tag, so that users can easily fill the data in the forms using select the data.
- **<keygen>**: The <keygen> tag in HTML is used to specify a key-pair generator field in a form. The purpose of <keygen> element is to provide a secure way to authenticate users. When a form is submitted then two keys are generated, private key and public key. The private key is stored locally, and the public key is sent to the server. The public key is used to generate client certificate to authenticate user for future.
- **<output>**: The <output> tag in HTML is used to represent the result of a calculation performed by the client-side script such as JavaScript.
- **<progress>**: It is used to represent the progress of a task. It also defines that how much work is done and how much is left to download a thing. It is not used to represent the disk space or relevant query.
- **<svg>**: It is the Scalable Vector Graphics.
- **<canvas>**: The <canvas> tag in HTML is used to draw graphics on web page using JavaScript. It can be used to draw paths, boxes, texts, gradient and adding images. By default it does not contain border and text.
- **<audio>**: It defines the music or audio content.
- **<embed>**: Defines containers for external applications (usually a video player).
- **<source>**: It defines the sources for <video> and <audio>.
- **<track>**: It defines the tracks for <video> and <audio>.
- **<video>**: It defines the video content.

TOPS Technologies

Difference between HTML and HTML5

HTML	HTML5
It didn't support audio and video without the use of flash player support.	It supports audio and video controls with the use of <audio> and <video> tags.
It uses cookies to store temporary data.	It uses SQL databases and application cache to store offline data.
Does not allow JavaScript to run in browser.	Allows JavaScript to run in background. This is possible due to JS Web worker API in HTML5.
Vector graphics is possible in HTML with the help of various technologies such as VML, Silver-light, Flash, etc.	Vector graphics is additionally an integral part of HTML5 like SVG and canvas.
It does not allow drag and drop effects.	It allows drag and drop effects.
Not possible to draw shapes like circle, rectangle, triangle etc.	HTML5 allows to draw shapes like circle, rectangle, triangle etc.
It works with all old browsers.	It supported by all new browser like Firefox, Mozilla, Chrome, Safari, etc.
Older version of HTML are less mobile-friendly.	HTML5 language is more mobile-friendly.
Doctype declaration is too long and complicated.	Doctype declaration is quite simple and

TOPS Technologies

	easy.
Elements like nav, header were not present.	New element for web structure like nav, header, footer etc.
Character encoding is long and complicated.	Character encoding is simple and easy.
It is almost impossible to get true GeoLocation of user with the help of browser.	One can track the GeoLocation of a user easily by using JS GeoLocation API.
It can not handle inaccurate syntax.	It is capable of handling inaccurate syntax.
Attributes like charset, async and ping are absent in HTML.	Attributes of charset, async and ping are a part of HTML 5.

Advantages:

- All browsers supported.
- More device friendly.
- Easy to use and implement.
- HTML 5 in integration with CSS, JavaScript, etc can help build beautiful websites.

Disadvantages:

- Long codes have to be written which is time consuming.
- Only modern browsers support it.
-

Supported Browsers: It is supported by all modern browsers.

TOPS Technologies

Below examples illustrate the HTML 5 content.

Example 1:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>

<head>
    <title>HTML 5</title>
    <style>
        h1 {
            font-size:50px;
        }
    </style>
</head>

<body>
    <h1>Tops Technologies</h1>
</body>

</html>
```

Output:



Tops Technologies

Example 2:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <title>HTML 5 Demo</title>

    <style>
        .GFG {
            font-size:40px;
            font-weight:bold;
            color:green;
        }
    </style>
</head>
```

```
}

body {
    text-align:center;
}

</style>
</head>

<body>
    <div class = "GFG">Tops
Technologies</div>
    <aside>
        <div>A IT Training Institute</div>
    </aside>
</body>

</html>
```

Output:

Tops Technologies
A IT Training Institute

CSS (Cascading Style Sheets)

Introduction

- Cascading Style Sheets (CSS).
- With CSS you will be able to:
- Add new looks to your old HTML
- Completely restyle a web site with only a few changes to your CSS code
- Use the "style" you create on any web page you wish!

CSS Selector

- SELECTOR { PROPERTY: VALUE }
- HTML tag" { "CSS Property": "Value" ; }
- The selector name creates a direct relationship with the HTML tag you want to edit. If you wanted to change the way a paragraph tag behaved, the CSS code would look like:
- p { PROPERTY: VALUE }
- The above example is a template that you can use whenever you are manipulating the paragraph HTML element

Three Types of CSS

- 1.Internal
- 2.External
- 3.Inline

Three Methods of CSS

- Using Selector
- Using Class
- Using ID

- **Inline** - by using the style attribute inside HTML elements
- **Internal** - by using a <style> element in the <head> section
- **External** - by using a <link> element to link to an external CSS file

Example of Internal CSS Code

An inline CSS is used to apply a unique style to a single HTML element.

An inline CSS uses the style attribute of an HTML element.

The following example sets the text color of the <h1> element to blue, and the text color of the <p> element to red:

TOPS Technologies

Example:

```
<html>
<head>
<style>
body {background-color: powderblue;}
h1 {color: blue;}
p {color: red;}
</style>
</head>
<body>

<h1>Tops Technologies</h1>
<p>Training and Placement Institute</p>

</body>
</html>
```

Output:

Tops Technologies

Training and Placement Institute

Example of External CSS Code

- When using CSS it is preferable to keep the CSS
- Separate from your HTML. Placing CSS in a separate file
- Allows the web designer to completely differentiate
- Between content (HTML) and design (CSS). External
- CSS is a file that contains only CSS code and is saved
- With a ".css" file extension. This CSS file is then
- Referenced in your HTML using the <link>**instead** of <style>.
- Now First of all we have to create one css file with extension .css like style.css
- In that we have to create different css code for different code

TOPS Technologies

Example:

Html code:

```
<html>
<head>
  <link rel="stylesheet" href="styles.css">
</head>
<body>

<h1>This is a heading</h1>
<p>This is a paragraph.</p>

</body>
</html>
```

Css code:

```
body {
  background-color: powderblue;
}
h1 {
  color: blue;
}
p {
  color: red;
}
```

Output:



TOPS Technologies

Example of Inline CSS Code:

Inline styles look and operate much like CSS, with a few differences. Inline styles directly affect the tag they are written in, without the use of selectors. Here's a basic HTML page using inline styles:

Example:

```
<html>
<head>
    <title>Playing with Inline Styles</title>
</head>
<body>
    <p style="color:blue;font-size:46px;">
        I'm a big, blue, <strong>strong</strong> paragraph
    </p>
</body>
</html>
```

Output:

I'm a big, blue, **strong** paragraph

Margins and Padding

- **Margin** and **padding** are the two most commonly used properties for spacing-out elements. A margin is the space **outside** of the element, whereas padding is the space **inside** the element
- The four sides of an element can also be set individually. **margin-top**, **margin-right**, **margin-bottom**, **margin-left**, **padding-top**, **padding-right**, **padding-bottom** and **padding-left** are the self-explanatory properties you can use.

CSS Classes & ID

- It is possible to give an HTML element multiple looks with CSS. link - this is a link that has not been used, nor is a mouse pointer hovering over it
- The Format of Classes
- Using classes is simple. You just need to add an extension to the typical CSS code and make sure you specify this extension in your HTML. Let's try this with an example of making two paragraphs that behave differently. First, we begin with the CSS code, note the red text.
- Id identifies with # and class identifies with .
- You may not know it, but a link has four different states that it can be in. CSS allows you to customize each state. Please refer to the following keywords that each correspond to one specific state:

TOPS Technologies

- link - this is a link that has not been used, nor is a mouse pointer hovering over it
- visited - this is a link that has been used before, but has no mouse on it
- hover - this is a link currently has a mouse pointer hovering over it/on it
- active - this is a link that is in the process of being clicked
- Using CSS you can make a different look for each one of these states, but at the end of this lesson we will suggest a good practice for CSS Links.

Example:

- Specify the color of links:
- ```
a:link {color:#FF0000} /* unvisited link */
a:visited {color:#00FF00} /* visited link */
a:hover {color:#FF00FF} /* mouse over link */
a:active {color:#0000FF} /* selected link */
```

Example:

```
<html lang="en"><head>
<title>Admin Login</title>

<style>

.login-page {
width: 360px;
padding: 8% 0 0;
margin: auto;
}
.form {
position: relative;
z-index: 1;
background: #FFFFFF;
max-width: 360px;
margin: 0 auto 100px;
padding: 45px;
text-align: center;
box-shadow: 0 0 20px 0 rgba(0, 0, 0, 0.2),
0 5px 5px 0 rgba(0, 0, 0, 0.24);
}
.form input {
font-family: "Roboto", sans-serif;
outline: 0;
background: #f2f2f2;
width: 100%;
border: 0;
margin: 0 0 15px;
padding: 15px;
```

# TOPS Technologies

---

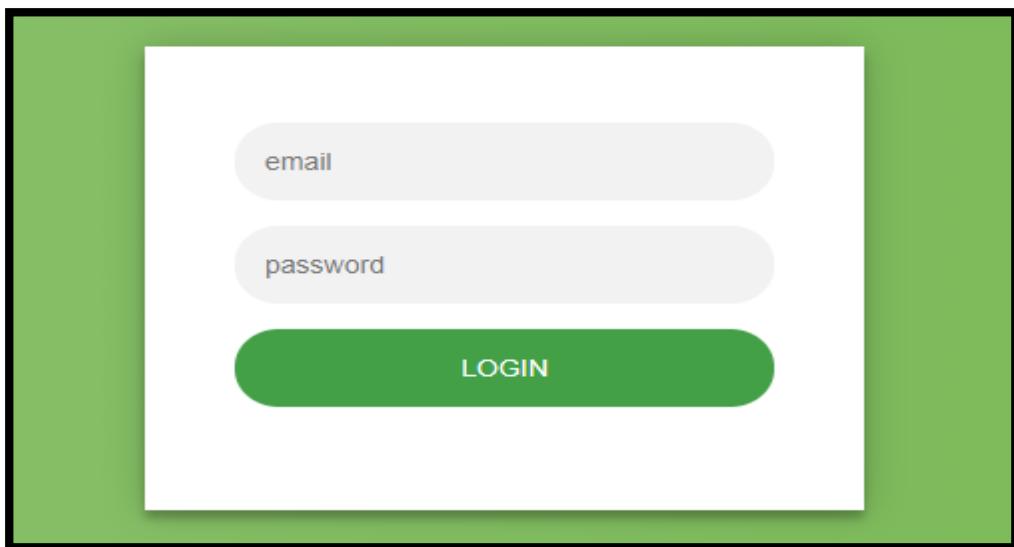
```
box-sizing: border-box;
font-size: 14px;
}
.form button {
font-family: "Roboto", sans-serif;
text-transform: uppercase;
outline: 0;
background: #4CAF50;
width: 100%;
border: 0;
padding: 15px;
color: #FFFFFF;
font-size: 14px;
-webkit-transition: all 0.3 ease;
transition: all 0.3 ease;
cursor: pointer;
}
.form button:hover,.form button:active,.form button:focus {
background: #43A047;
}
.form .message {
margin: 15px 0 0;
color: #b3b3b3;
font-size: 12px;
}
.form .message a {
color: #4CAF50;
text-decoration: none;
}
.form .register-form {
display: none;
}
body {
background: #76b852; /* fallback for old browsers */
background: -webkit-linear-gradient(right, #76b852,
#8DC26F);
background: -moz-linear-gradient(right, #76b852, #8DC26F);
background: linear-gradient(to left, #76b852, #8DC26F);
font-family: "Roboto", sans-serif;
-webkit-font-smoothing: antialiased;
-moz-osx-font-smoothing: grayscale;
}
```

```
input {
 border-radius: 22px;
}

button {
 border-radius: 22px;
}
 </style>

</head>
<body>
<center>
<div class="login-page">
 <div class="form" >
 <form class="login-form" method="post" action="/admin.php">
 <input type="text" placeholder="email" name="email"/>
 <input type="password" placeholder="password" name="password" />
 <button>login</button>
 <p class="message" style="color:red;"></p>
 </form>
 </div>
</div>
</center>
</body>
```

Output:



## CSS3

### Pseudo-classes

A Pseudo class in CSS is used to define the special state of an element. It can be combined with a CSS selector to add an effect to existing elements based on their states. For Example, changing the style of an element when the user hovers over it, or when a link is visited. All of these can be done using Pseudo Classes in CSS.

Note that pseudo-class names are not case-sensitive.

Syntax:

```
selector: pseudo-class{
 property: value;
}
```

There are many Pseudo classes in CSS but the ones which are most commonly used are as follows:

- **:hover Pseudo-class:** This pseudo-class is used to add special effect to an element when our mouse pointer is over it. The below example demonstrates that when your mouse enters the box area, its background color changes from yellow to orange.

#### Example:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
 <title>CSS transition-property property</title>
 <style>
 .box{
 background-color: yellow;
 width: 300px;
 height: 200px;
 margin: auto;
 font-size: 40px;
 text-align: center;
 }

 .box:hover{
 background-color: orange;
 }
 h1, h2{
 color: green;
 text-align: center;
 }
 </style>
</head>
```

# TOPS Technologies

---

```
<body>
 <h1>Tops Technologies</h1>
 <h2>:hover Pseudo-class</h2>
 <div class="box">
 My color changes if you hover over me!
 </div>
</body>
</html>
```

Output:



**:active Pseudo-class:** This pseudo-class is used to select an element which is activated when the user clicks on it. The following example demonstrates that when you click on the box, its background color changes for a moment.

**Example:**

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
 <title>CSS transition-property property</title>
 <style>
 .box{
 background-color: yellow;
 width: 300px;
 height: 200px;
 margin: auto;
 font-size: 40px;
 text-align: center;
 }
 .box:active{
 background-color: orange;
 }
 h1, h2{
 color: green;
 text-align: center;
 }
 </style>
</head>
<body>
 <h1>Tops Technologies</h1>
 <h2>:active Pseudo-class</h2>
 <div class="box">
 My color changes for a moment if you click me!
 </div>
</body>
</html>
```

## Tops Technologies

### :active Pseudo-class

My color changes  
for a moment if  
you click me!

**:focus Pseudo-class:** This pseudo-class is used to select an element which is currently focussed by the user. It works on user input elements used in forms and is triggered as soon as the user clicks on it. In the following example, the background color of the input field which is currently focussed changes.

**Example:**

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
 <title>CSS transition-property property</title>
 <style>
 form{
 width: 300px;
 height: 200px;
 margin: 0 auto;
 text-align: center;
 line-height: 2rem;
 }

 label{
 width: 30%;
 }

 input{
 background-color: default;
 float: right;
 }

 input:focus{
 background-color: grey;
 }

 h1, h2{
 color: green;
 text-align: center;
 }
 </style>
</head>
```

```
<body>
 <h1>Geeks For Geeks</h1>
 <h2>:focus Pseudo-class</h2>
 <form>
 <label
 for="username">Username:</label>
 <input type="text" name="username"
 placeholder="Enter your username"
 />

 <label for="emailid">Email-Id:</label>
 <input type="email" name="emailid"
 placeholder="Enter your email-id" />

 <label
 for="Password">Password:</label>
 <input type="password"
 name="Password"
 placeholder="Enter your password"
 />
 </form>
</body>
</html>
```

**Geeks For Geeks**

**:focus Pseudo-class**

Username: Email-

Id: Password:

**:visited Pseudo-class:** This pseudo-class is used to select the links which have been already visited by the user. In the following example, the color of the link changes once it is visited.

**Example:**

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
 <title>CSS transition-property property</title>
 <style>
 body{
 text-align: center;
 }

 h1, h2{
 color: green;
 }

 a:visited{
 color: red;
 }
 </style>
</head>
```

```
<body>
 <h1>Tops Technologies</h1>
 <h2>:visited Pseudo-class</h2>

 <p>

 My color changes once you vist this link

 </p>
</body>
</html>
```

## Tops Technologies

### :visited Pseudo-class

My color changes once you vist this link

#### Border-radius:

- the border-radius property is used to create rounded corners:

#### Example:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
 <title></title>
 <style type="text/css">
span {
 font-size: 47px;
 border: 1px solid black;
 padding: 7px;
 border-radius: 27px;
 margin-top: 1900px;
}
div {
 width: 400px;
 margin-top: 11px;
 float: left;
}
</style>
</head>
<body>
<div>
 Tops Technologies
</div>
</body>
</html>
```

Output:



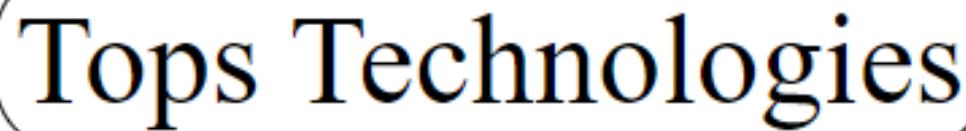
## Border-Shadow:

- the box-shadow property is used to add shadow to boxes:

Example:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
 <title></title>
 <style type="text/css">
span {
 font-size: 47px;
 border: 1px solid black;
 padding: 7px;
 border-radius: 27px;
 margin-top: 1900px;
 box-shadow: 12px 12px 5px #666666;
}
div {
 width: 400px;
 margin-top: 11px;
 float: left;
}
</style>
</head>
<body>
<div>
 Tops Technologies
</div>
</body>
</html>
```

Output:



Tops Technologies

## Text-Shadow:

- the Text-shadow property is used to add shadow to text:

Example:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
 <title></title>
 <style type="text/css">
span {
 font-size: 47px;
 border: 1px solid black;
 padding: 7px;
 border-radius: 27px;
 margin-top: 1900px;
 text-shadow: 2px 2px #ff0000; box-shadow: 12px 12px 5px #666666;
}
div {
 width: 400px;
 margin-top: 11px;
 float: left;
}
</style>
</head>
<body>
<div>
 Tops Technologies
</div>
</body>
</html>
```

Output:



## Difference between CSS and CSS3

CSS works with HTML and provides a basic style and look to the website. CSS3 is the latest version of CSS. **CSS3** provides JavaScript and mobile development features with additional features such as **transitions**, **gradients**, and more. In this section, we will discuss the **differences between CSS and CSS3**. Some of the essential differences between CSS and CSS3 are:

Features	CSS	CSS3
Compatibility	The primary purpose of CSS was to focus on formatting features. They have capabilities for positioning texts and objects. CSS is backward compatible with CSS3.	When CSS3 code is written in CSS, it is invalid. CSS3 makes the Web Pages more attractive. It takes less time to create a page.
Design	CSS does not support responsive design.	CSS3 is the latest version and supports the responsive design.
Modules	CSS is not divided into modules.	CSS3 could split into modules.
Animation	CSS cannot produce 3D animation and transformation.	In CSS3, the animation and 3D transformations are used. Elements are moved across the screen with the assistance of JavaScript and flash. By using the elements, also be ready to change the size and color. All kinds of <b>transformations</b> and <b>animations</b> are performed by using CSS3.

# TOPS Technologies

Rounded corners and gradient	<p>When CSS3 was launched, the developers designed some images that looked like the rounded corners with <b>the structures and backgrounds.</b> Developers are designing a <b>border</b> and <b>uploading</b> the design to the server.</p>	<p>In CSS3 the developer writes the code like:</p> <pre>round border {border-radius: 20px}.</pre> <p>They have not been sent by any server and perform any other activities. Gradients will also be set by using the code which is given below:</p> <pre>gradBG {Background:linear-gradient(red,black);}</pre>
Text Effects and Text Animations	<p>In CSS, animations are written in <b>JavaScript</b> and <b>JQuery</b>. It has not to design layer features and page elements. It had no special effects such as <b>shadowing text</b>, <b>text animation</b>, etc.</p>	<p>In CSS3, the developer adds <b>text-shadows</b> to make it easy and effective. They add words for the visual effects of the break line and a comfortable fit inside the column. It changes the size and color of the text.</p>
Capacity	CSS is slower.	CSS3 is faster than CSS.
Color	CSS provides unique color schemas and standard color.	CSS3 supports <b>HSL</b> <b>RGBA</b> , <b>HSLA</b> and the gradient colors.
Blocks	Multi-column text blocks are defined in <b>CSS3</b> .	CSS supports single text blocks.
Lists	<p>CSS allows a user to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. It set different lists for ordered lists</li> <li>2. CSS set an image for a list item marker</li> <li>3. CSS add background colors to the list and list items.</li> </ol> <p>Some list item markers are: <b>list-style-type</b>. These can be set <b>circle</b>, <b>square</b>, etc.</p>	<p>In CSS3, The list item has a counter and affected by counter increment and counter reset properties.</p> <p>In CSS if we use list in <b>CSS3</b> the '<b>display</b>' property must have a list defined in it. CSS3 cannot support a numbering system. The list style image property enables an image is set against the style type marker. It will set as inside the box or outside the box.</p>

# TOPS Technologies

---

## Introduction of Bootstrap:

Bootstrap is a free and open-source tool collection for creating responsive websites and web applications. It is the most popular HTML, CSS, and JavaScript framework for developing responsive, mobile-first web sites. It solves many problems which we had once, one of which is the cross-browser compatibility issue. Nowadays, the websites are perfect for all the browsers (IE, Firefox and Chrome) and for all sizes of screens (Desktop, Tablets, Phablets, and Phones). All thanks to Bootstrap developers -Mark Otto and Jacob Thornton of Twitter, though it was later declared to be an open-source project.

### Why Bootstrap?

- Faster and Easier Web-Development.
- It creates Platform-independent web-pages.
- It creates Responsive Web-pages.
- It designed to be responsive to mobile devices too.
- It is Free! Available on [www.getbootstrap.com](http://www.getbootstrap.com)

### Mobile-First

Not only is Bootstrap responsive, it is mobile-first. This means that it is primarily designed for mobile devices, then scales up from there (as opposed to being designed for desktop, then trying to scale it down to mobile devices).

### Bootstrap Components

Bootstrap includes components such as buttons, navbars, dropdown menus, alert boxes, and more. In most cases, you can make use of a component simply by using the appropriate class name.

We'll be looking at these components throughout this tutorial. We've got plenty of interactive examples that enable you to see exactly how these components work.

### Advantages of Bootstrap

One of the main benefits of development frameworks like Bootstrap is that they can help speed up development times, while maintaining quality and consistency across the site. You no longer need to re-design every element. And you don't need to spend hours trying to get everything looking and working right across browsers, platforms, and devices. By using Bootstrap, all (most) of the hard work is done for you.

Given Bootstrap is the most popular frontend development framework on the web, this skillset could be a useful one to learn. Adding Bootstrap to your bag of tricks could help you in many ways — from building websites faster, to landing your dream job.

Also, although Bootstrap comes with its own set of styles, these are easy to override. You're not locked into the "Bootstrap design". You are free to use whichever Bootstrap components you choose, while adding your own on top. There are thousands of websites out there that are built on Bootstrap, but with their own design.

### Who's Using Bootstrap?

Bootstrap can be used to build websites of any scale, from small blogs to large corporate websites. Organizations that use Bootstrap include NASA, University of Washington, FIFA, Newsweek, VOGUE and many more.

# TOPS Technologies

---

Example:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
 <title>Bootstrap Example</title>
 <meta charset="utf-8">
 <meta name="viewport" content="width=device-width, initial-scale=1">
 <link rel="stylesheet"
 href="https://maxcdn.bootstrapcdn.com/bootstrap/3.4.1/css/bootstrap.min.css">
 <script src="https://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/libs/jquery/3.5.1/jquery.min.js"></script>
 <script src="https://maxcdn.bootstrapcdn.com/bootstrap/3.4.1/js/bootstrap.min.js"></script>
</head>
<body>
<div class="jumbotron text-center">
 <h1>My First Bootstrap Page</h1>
 <p>Resize this responsive page to see the effect!</p>
</div>
<div class="container">
 <div class="row">
 <div class="col-sm-4">
 <h3>Column 1</h3>
 <p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisicing elit...</p>
 <p>Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris...</p>
 </div>
 <div class="col-sm-4">
 <h3>Column 2</h3>
 <p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisicing elit...</p>
 <p>Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris...</p>
 </div>
 <div class="col-sm-4">
 <h3>Column 3</h3>
 <p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisicing elit...</p>
 <p>Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris...</p>
 </div>
 </div>
</div>
</body>
</html>
```

Output:

# My First Bootstrap Page

Resize this responsive page to see the effect!

<b>Column 1</b> Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisicing elit... Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris...	<b>Column 2</b> Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisicing elit... Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris...	<b>Column 3</b> Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisicing elit... Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris...
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**C Hand Book  
Version – October 2020**

# TOPS Technologies

---

## Introduction to C

### History

The C language was developed at AT&T Bell Labs in the early 1970s by Dennis Ritchie. It was based on an earlier Bell Labs language "B" which itself was based on the BCPL language (Basic Computer Programming Language). Since early on, C has been used with the UNIX operating system, but it is not bound to any particular O/S or hardware.

C has gone through some revisions since its introduction. The American National Standards Institute (ANSI) developed the first standardized specification for the language in 1989, commonly referred to as C89. Before that, the only specification was an informal one from the book "The C Programming Language" by Brian Kernighan and Dennis Ritchie.

The next major revision was published in 1999. This revision introduced some new features, data types and some other changes. This is referred to as the C99 standard.

Let's see the programming languages that were developed before C language.

Language	Year	Developed By
Algol	1960	International Group
BCPL	1967	Martin Richard
B	1970	Ken Thompson
Traditional C	1972	Dennis Ritchie
K & R C	1978	Kernighan & Dennis Ritchie
ANSI C	1989	ANSI Committee
ANSI/ISO C	1990	ISO Committee
C99	1999	Standardization Committee

### Objectives

C has been used successfully for every type of programming problem imaginable from operating systems to spreadsheets to expert systems - and efficient compilers are available for machines ranging in power from the Apple Macintosh to the Cray supercomputers. The largest measure of C's success seems to be based on purely practical considerations:

- the portability of the compiler;
- the standard library concept;

# TOPS Technologies

---

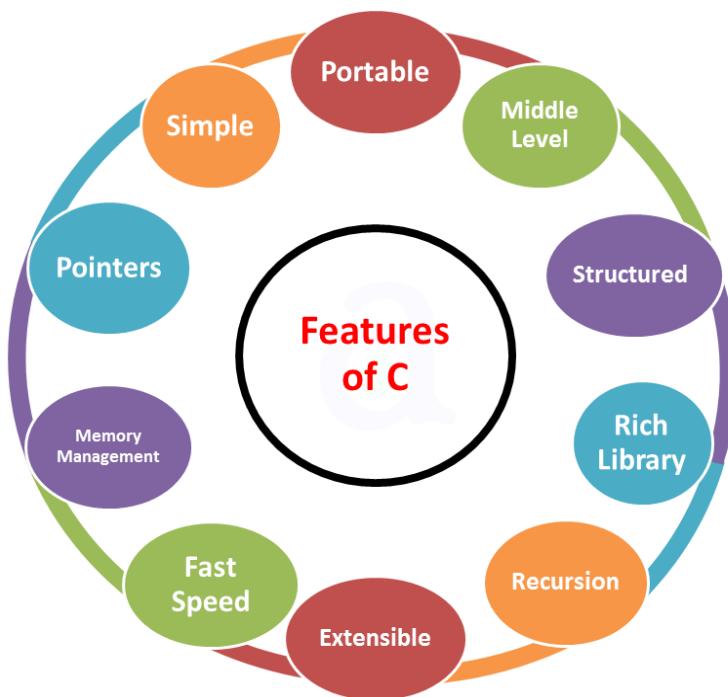
- a powerful and varied repertoire of operators;
- an elegant syntax;
- ready access to the hardware when needed;

The ease with which applications can be optimized by hand-coding isolated procedures C is often called a "High Level" programming language. This is not a reflection on its lack of programming power but more a reflection on its capability to access the system's low level functions.

Most high-level languages (e.g. FORTRAN) provide everything the programmer might want to do already built into the language. A low level language (e.g. assembly) provides nothing other than access to the machine's basic instruction set. A middle level language, such as C, probably doesn't supply all the constructs found in high-level languages - but it provides you with all the building blocks that you will need to produce the results you want!

## Features of C Language

C is the widely used language. It provides many **features** that are given below.



1. Simple
2. Machine Independent or Portable
3. Mid-level programming language
4. Structured programming language
5. Rich Library
6. Memory Management

- 7. Fast Speed
- 8. Pointers
- 9. Recursion
- 10. Extensible

## **1) Simple**

C is a simple language in the sense that it provides a **structured approach** (to break the problem into parts), **the rich set of library functions, data types**, etc.

## **2) Machine Independent or Portable**

Unlike assembly language, c programs **can be executed on different machines** with some machine specific changes. Therefore, C is a machine independent language.

## **3) Mid-level programming language**

Although, C is **intended to do low-level programming**. It is used to develop system applications such as kernel, driver, etc. It **also supports the features of a high-level language**. That is why it is known as mid-level language.

## **4) Structured programming language**

C is a structured programming language in the sense that **we can break the program into parts using functions**. So, it is easy to understand and modify. Functions also provide code reusability.

## **5) Rich Library**

C **provides a lot of inbuilt functions** that make the development fast.

## **6) Memory Management**

It supports the feature of **dynamic memory allocation**. In C language, we can free the allocated memory at any time by calling the **free()** function.

## **7) Speed**

The compilation and execution time of C language is fast since there are lesser inbuilt functions and hence the lesser overhead.

## **8) Pointer**

C provides the feature of pointers. We can directly interact with the memory by using the pointers. We **can use pointers for memory, structures, functions, array**, etc.

## **9) Recursion**

In C, we **can call the function within the function**. It provides code reusability for every function. Recursion enables us to use the approach of backtracking.

## **10) Extensible**

C language is extensible because it **can easily adopt new features**.

## Use of C

C was initially used for system development work, in particular the programs that make-up the operating system. Why use C? Mainly because it produces code that runs nearly as fast as code written in assembly language. Some examples of the use of C might be:

Operating Systems

Language Compilers

Assemblers

Text Editors

Print Spoolers

Network Drivers

Modern Programs

Data Bases

Language Interpreters

Utilities

## C for Personal Computers

With regards to personal computers Microsoft C for IBM (or clones) PC's. And Borland's C is seen to be the two most commonly used systems. However, the latest version of Microsoft C is now considered to be the most powerful and efficient C compiler for personal computers. We hope we have now managed to convince you to continue with this online C course and hopefully in time become a confident C programmer. The Edit-Compile-Link-Execute Process Developing a program in a compiled language such as C requires at least four steps:

Editing (or writing) the program

Compiling it

Linking it

Executing it

## Editing

You write a computer program with words and symbols that are understandable to human beings. This is the editing part of the development cycle. You type the program directly into a window on the screen and save the resulting text as a separate file. The custom is that the text of a C program is stored in a file with the extension .c for C programming language

## Compiling

You cannot directly execute the source file. To run on any computer system, the source file must be translated into binary numbers understandable to the computer's Central Processing Unit (for example, the 80\*87 microprocessor). This process produces an intermediate object file - with the extension .obi, the .obj stands for Object.

## Linking

The first question that comes to most people's minds is why is linking necessary? The main reason is that many compiled languages come with library routines which can be added to your program. These routines are written by the manufacturer of the compiler to perform a variety of tasks, from input/output to complicated mathematical functions. In the case of C the standard input and output functions are contained in a library (stdio.h) so even the most basic program will require a library function. After linking the file extension is .exe which is executable files.

## Executable files

Thus the text editor produces .c source files, which go to the compiler, which produces .obj object files, which go to the linker, which produces .exe executable file. You can then run .exe files as you can other applications.

## Structure of C Programs

### The form of a C Program

All C programs will consist of at least one function, but it is usual (when your experience grows) to write a C program that comprises several functions. The only function that has to be present is the function called main. For more advanced programs the main function will act as a controlling function calling other functions in their turn to do the dirty work! The main function is the first function that is called when your program executes makes use of only 32 keywords which combine with the formal syntax to the form the C programming language. Note that all keywords are written in lower case - C, like UNIX. A keyword may not be used for any other purposes. For example, you cannot have a variable name called auto.

### The layout of C Programs

The general form of a C program is as follows (doesn't worry about what everything means at the moment - things will be explained later):

```
Documentations
Pre processor Statements
Global Declarations
main ()
{
 Local declarations
 Body of the main function
 Program statements
}
```

## User defined functions

### Documentations

The documentation section consist of a set of comment lines giving the name of the program, the name and other details, which the programmer would like to use later.

### Preprocessors Statements

C is a small language but provides the programmer with all the tools to be able to write powerful

Programs. C uses libraries of standard functions which are included when we build our programs. For the novice C programmer one of the many questions always asked is does a function already exist for what I want to do? Only experience will help here but we do include a function listing as part of this course.

All pre-processor directives begin with a # and the must start in the first column. The commonest directive to all C programs is:

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

### Global Declaration

The variables are declared before the main ( ) function as well as user defined functions is called global variables. These global variables can be accessed by all the user defined functions including main ( ) function.

### main () Function

Each and Every C program should contain only one main ( ). The C program execution starts with main ( ) function. No C program is executed without the main function. The main ( ) function should be written in small (lowercase) letters and it should not be terminated by semicolon. Main ( ) executes user defined program statements, library functions and user defined functions and all these statements should be enclosed within left and right braces.

() are used in conjunction with function names whereas {} are used as to delimit the C statements that are associated with that function. Also note the

**semicolon** - yes it is there, but you might have missed it! A semicolon (;) is used to terminate C statements. C is a free format language and long statements can be continued, without truncation, onto the next line. The semicolon informs the C compiler that the end of the statement has been reached. Free format also means that you can add as many spaces as you like to improve the look of your programs.

A very common mistake made by everyone, who is new to the C programming language, is to miss off the semicolon. The C compiler will concatenate the various lines of the program together and then tries to understand them - which it will not be able to do. The error message produced by the compiler will relate to a line of you program which could be some distance from the initial mistake.

### Local Declarations

The variable declaration is a part of C program and all the variables are used in main ( ) function should be declared in the local declaration section is called local variables.

### Program Statements

These statements are building blocks of a program. They represent instructions to the computer to perform a specific task (operations). An instruction may contain an input-output statements, arithmetic statements, control statements, simple assignment statements and any other statements and it also includes comments that are enclosed within /\* and \*/ . The comment statements are not compiled and executed and each executable statement should be terminated with semicolon.

# TOPS Technologies

---

## User defined function

These are subprograms, generally, a subprogram is a function and these functions are written by the user are called user; defined functions. These functions are performed by user specific tasks and this also contains set of program statements.

## Objectives

Having read this section you should have an understanding of:

- A pre-processor directive that must be present in all your C programs.
- A simple C function used to write information to your screen.
- how to add comments to your programs

Now that you've seen the compiler in action it's time for you to write your very own first C program. All your first program is going to do is print the message "Hello World" on the screen.

```
#include <stdio.h>
void main()
{
 printf("Hello World\n");
}
```

The first line is the standard start for all C programs - main(). After this comes the program's only instruction enclosed in curly brackets {}. The curly brackets mark the start and end of the list of

Instructions that make up the program - in this case just one instruction.

Notice the semicolon marking the end of the instruction. You might as well get into the habit of ending every C instruction with a semicolon - it will save you a lot of trouble! Also notice that the semicolon marks the end of an instruction - it isn't a separator as is the custom in other languages.

For example, you could enter the Hello World program as:

```
main()
{
 printf("Hello World\n");
}
```

But this is unusual.

The printf function does what its name suggest it does: it prints, on the screen, whatever you tell it to. The "\n" is a special symbol that forces a new line on the screen. Then use the compiler to compile it, then the linker to link it and finally run it. The output is:

Hello World

## Keyword and Identifier

### Keywords

Keyword is the built-in word which is stored in library. We cannot use this word as identifiers. Keywords like if, for, continue, break, etc....which have some meaning in library. Keywords are predefined reserved identifiers that have special meanings. They cannot be used as identifiers in your program. In c language 32 keywords.

auto	double	int	struct
break	else	long	switch
case	enum	register	typedef
char	extern	return	union
const	float	short	unsigned
continue	for	signed	void
default	goto	sizeof	volatile
do	if	static	while

### Identifiers:

Identifiers are user define name or word like variable name, array name, function name and structure, class name etc...

For example:

```
Int var1=90;
```

Here var1 is identifier because its variable name.

### Rules for Identifiers

The identifiers must conform to the following rules.

1. First character must be an alphabet (or underscore)
2. Identifier names must consists of only letters, digits and underscore.
3. An identifier name should have less than 31 characters.
4. Any standard C language keyword cannot be used as a variable name.
5. An identifier should not contain a space.

### Constants:

Constants refer to fixed values that may not be altered by the program. All the data types we have previously covered can be defined as constant data types if we so wish to do so. The constant data types must be defined before the main function.

A variable is called constant when its value not changes during the program.

Constants are 2 types:

- 1) const keyword
- 2) #define constant (symbolic constant)

#### 1) Const keyword:

We can assign this keyword to any variable and make it to const variable. For example:

```
const int a=90;
```

# TOPS Technologies

---

Here, the value of a will be 90 to whole program, doesn't change its value.

## 2) #define constant (symbolic constant):

```
#define CONSTANTNAME value
```

For example:

```
#define SALESTAX 0.05
```

The constant name is normally written in capitals and does not have a semi-colon at the end. The use of

Constants is mainly for making your programs easier to be understood and modified by others and

Yourself in the future. An example program

```
#include <stdio.h>
#define SALESTAX 0.05
main()
{
 float amount, taxes, total;
 printf("Enter the amount purchased : ");
 scanf("%f",&amount);
 taxes = SALESTAX*amount;
 printf("The sales tax is £%4.2f",taxes);
 printf("\n The total bill is £%5.2f",total);
}
```

The float constant SALESTAX is defined with value 0.05. Three float variables are declared amount, taxes and total. Display message to the screen is achieved using printf and user input handled by scanf. Calculation is then performed and results sent to the screen. If the value of SALESTAX alters in the future it is very easy to change the value where it is defined rather than go through the whole program changing the individual values separately, which would be very time consuming in a large program with several references. The program is also improved when using constants rather than values as it improves the clarity.

# TOPS Technologies

---

## Data Types

Now we have to start looking into the details of the C language. How easy you find the rest of this section will depend on whether you have ever programmed before - no matter what the language was.

The first thing you need to know is that you can create variables to store values in. A variable is just a

Named areas of storage that can hold a single value (numeric or character). To create variables and what you store in them. It demands that you declare the name of each variable that you are going to use and its type, or class, before you actually try to do anything with it. In this section we are only going to be discussing local variables. These are variables that are used within the current program unit (or function) in a later section we will look at global variables - variables that are available to all the program's functions.

There are five basic data types associated with variables:

<b>Keyword</b>	<b>Format Specified</b>	<b>Size</b>	<b>Data Range</b>
char	%c	1 Byte	-128 to +127
unsigned char	<--- -- >	8 Bytes	0 to 255
int	%d	2 Bytes	-32768 to +32767
long int	%ld	4 Bytes	- $2^{31}$ to $+2^{31}$
unsigned int	%u	2 Bytes	0 to 65535
float	%f	4 Bytes	- $3.4e^{38}$ to $+3.4e^{38}$
double	%lf	8 Bytes	- $1.7e^{308}$ to $+1.7e^{308}$
long double	%Lf	12-16 Bytes	Same as double

One of the confusing things about the C language is that the range of values and the amount of storage that each of these types takes is not defined. This is because in each case the 'natural' choice is made for each type of machine. You can call variables what you like, although it helps if you give them sensible names that give you a hint of what they're being used for - names like sum, total, average and so on.

## Qualifier

When qualifier is applied to the data type then it changes its size.

Size qualifiers: short, long

Sign qualifiers: signed, unsigned

## Variable

It is a data name which is used to store data and may change during program execution. It is opposite to constant. Rules For Create Variable

- First character should be letter or alphabet.
- Keywords are not allowed to use as a variable name.
- White space is not allowed.
- C is case sensitive i.e. UPPER and lower case are significant.
- Only underscore, special symbol is allowed between two characters.
- The length of identifier may be up to 31 characters but only the first 8 characters are significant by compiler.

(Note: Some compilers allow variable names whose length may be up to 247 characters. But, it is recommended to use maximum 31 characters in variable name. Large variable name leads to occur errors.)

## Integer Number Variables

The first type of variable we need to know about is of class type int - short for integer. An int variable can store a value in the range -32768 to +32767. You can think of it as a largish positive or negative whole number: no fractional part is allowed. To declare an int you use the instruction:

```
int variable_name;
```

For example:

```
int a;
```

Declares that you want to create an int variable called a.

To assign a value to our integer variable we would use the following C statement:

```
a=10;
```

The C programming language uses the "=" character for assignment. A statement of the form a=10; should be interpreted as take the numerical value 10 and store it in a memory location associated with the integer variable a. The "=" character should not be seen as an equality otherwise writing statements of the form:

```
a=a+10;
```

Will get mathematicians blowing fuses! This statement should be interpreted as take the current value stored in a memory location associated with the integer variable a; add the numerical value 10 to it and then replace this value in the memory location associated with a.

## Decimal Number Variables

As described above, an integer variable has no fractional part. Integer variables tend to be used for counting, whereas real numbers are used in arithmetic. C uses one of two keywords to declare a variable that is to be associated with a decimal number: float and double.

### Float

A float, or floating point, number has about seven digits of precision and a range of about 1.E-36 to. A float takes four bytes to store.

### Double

A double, or double precision, number has about 13 digits of precision and a range of about 1.7E-308 to 1.7E+308. A double takes eight bytes to store.

For example:

```
float total;
double sum;
```

To assign a numerical value to our floating point and double precision variables we would use the following C statement:

```
total=0.0;
sum=12.50;
```

## Character Variables

C only has a concept of numbers and characters. It very often comes as a surprise to some programmers who learnt a beginner's language such as BASIC that C has no understanding of strings but a string is only an array of characters.

For example:

```
char c;
```

To assign, or store, a character value in a char data type is easy - a character variable is

# TOPS Technologies

---

just a symbol enclosed by single quotes. For example, if c is a char variable you can store the letter A in it using the following C statement:

c='A'

Notice that you can only store a single character in a char variable. Later we will be discussing using character strings, which has a very real potential for confusion because a string constant is written between double quotes. But for the moment remember that a char variable is 'A' and not "A".

## Void Data type

The void type basically means "nothing". A void type cannot hold any values. You can also declare a function's return type as void to indicate that the function does not return any value.

## Enum Data Type

This is a user defined data type having finite set of enumeration constants. The keyword 'enum' is used to create enumerated data type.

## Typedef

It is used to create new data type. But it is commonly used to change existing data type with another name.

## Input and Output Functions

a=100;

Stores 100 in the variable at each time you run the program, no matter what you do. Without some sort of input command every program would produce exactly the same result every time it was run. There are a number of different C input commands, the most useful of which is the scanf command. To read a single integer value into the variable called a you would use:

scanf("%d",&a);

For the moment doesn't worry about what the %d or the &a means - concentrate on the difference between this and:

a=100;

When the program reaches the scanf statement it pauses to give the user time to type something on the keyboard and continues only when users press <Enter>, or <Return>, to signal that he, or she, has finished entering the value. Then the program continues with the new value stored in a.

To display the value stored in the variable a you would use:

```
printf("The value stored in a is %d",a);
```

The %d, both in the case of scanf and printf, simply lets the compiler know that the value being read in, or printed out, is a decimal integer - that is, a few digits but no decimal point.

Note: the scanf function does not prompt for an input. You should get in the habit of always using a printf function, informing the user of the program what they should type, before a scanf function.

## The % Format Specifiers

The % specifiers that you can use in ANSI C are:

Usual variable type Display

%c char single character

%d (%i) int signed integer  
%e (%E) float or double exponential format  
%f float or double signed decimal

## Formatting Your Output

flag width. Precision number.

\b backspace  
\f formfeed  
\n new line  
\0 null

Example:

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
 int a,b,c;
 printf("\nThe first number is ");
 scanf("%d",&a);
 printf("The second number is ");
 scanf("%d",&b);
 c=a+b;
 printf("The answer is %d \n",c);
}
```

## Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\sum.exe

The first number is 12
The second number is 12
The answer is 24

Process exited after 3.87 seconds with return value 18
Press any key to continue . . .
```

## Single character input output:

The getchar function can be used to read a character from the standard input device. The scanf can also be used to achieve the function. The getchar has the following form.

Character \_variable = getchar();

Variable name is a valid '\_C' variable, that has been declared already and that possess the type char.

# TOPS Technologies

For example:

```
char ch;
ch = getchar();
```

The putchar function which is analogous to getchar function can be used for writing characters one at a time to the output terminal. The general form is  
putchar (variable name);

for example:

```
putchar (ch);
```

Displays the value stored in variable ch to the standard screen.

## Storage Classes

A storage class defines scope (visibility) and life time of variables and functions.

Types of storage classes:

- 1) auto
- 2) register
- 3) static
- 4) extern

### 1) Auto:

Auto is default storage class for all local variables.

Keyword: auto

Storage location: main memory

Scope: local to that block when it declares.

For example:

```
int c;
auto int c;
```

here both are same.

### 2) Register:

Register is fast access variable because its store in CPU register.

Keyword: register

Storage location: CPU register

Scope: local to that block when it declares.

For example:

```
register int c;
```

### 3) Static:

Keyword: static

Storage Location: Main memory

Initial Value: Zero and can be initialize once only.

Life: depends on function calls and the whole application or program.

Scope: Local to the block.

#### Syntax:

```
static [data_type] [variable_name];
```

#### Example:

```
static int a;
```

There are two types of static variables as:

# TOPS Technologies

---

- a) Local Static Variable
- b) Global Static Variable

Static storage class can be used only if we want the value of a variable to persist between different function calls.

We look example in latter.

## 4) extern:

Variables can be declared as either local variables which can be used inside the function it has been declared in (more on this in further sections) or global variables which are known throughout the entire program. Global variables are created by declaring them outside any function. For example:

```
extern int max;
```

```
main()
```

```
{
```

```
....
```

```
}
```

```
f1()
```

```
{
```

```
....
```

```
}
```

The int max can be used in both main and function f1 and any changes made to it will remain consistent for both functions. The understanding of this will become clearer when you have studied the section on functions but I felt I couldn't complete a section on data types without mentioning global and local variables.

## Operators

An operator is a symbol that tells the compiler to perform specific mathematical or logical functions. C language is rich in built-in operators and provides the following types of operators –

- Arithmetic Operators
- Relational Operators
- Logical Operators
- Bitwise Operators
- Assignment Operators
- Misc Operators

## Arithmetic Operator

The following table shows all the arithmetic operators supported by the C language. Assume variable A holds 10 and variable B holds 20 then –

Operator	Description	Example
+	Adds two operands.	$A + B = 30$

# TOPS Technologies

-	Subtracts second operand from the first.	A - B = -10
*	Multiplies both operands.	A * B = 200
/	Divides numerator by de-numerator.	B / A = 2
%	Modulus Operator and remainder of after an integer division.	B % A = 0
++	Increment operator increases the integer value by one.	A++ = 11
--	Decrement operator decreases the integer value by one.	A-- = 9

## Program:

```
#include <stdio.h>
void main() {
 int a = 21;
 int b = 10;
 int c ;
 c = a + b;
 printf("Line 1 - Value of c is %d\n", c);

 c = a - b;
 printf("Line 2 - Value of c is %d\n", c);

 c = a * b;
 printf("Line 3 - Value of c is %d\n", c);

 c = a / b;
 printf("Line 4 - Value of c is %d\n", c);

 c = a % b;
 printf("Line 5 - Value of c is %d\n", c);

 c = a++;
 printf("Line 6 - Value of c is %d\n", c);

 c = a--;
 printf("Line 7 - Value of c is %d\n", c);
}
```

# TOPS Technologies

Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\arithmeticop.exe
Line 1 - Value of c is 31
Line 2 - Value of c is 11
Line 3 - Value of c is 210
Line 4 - Value of c is 2
Line 5 - Value of c is 1
Line 6 - Value of c is 21
Line 7 - Value of c is 22

Process exited after 0.1268 seconds with return value 26
Press any key to continue . . .
```

## Relational Operators

The following table shows all the relational operators supported by C. Assume variable **A** holds 10 and variable **B** holds 20 then –

Operator	Description	Example
<code>==</code>	Checks if the values of two operands are equal or not. If yes, then the condition becomes true.	<code>(A == B)</code> is not true.
<code>!=</code>	Checks if the values of two operands are equal or not. If the values are not equal, then the condition becomes true.	<code>(A != B)</code> is true.
<code>&gt;</code>	Checks if the value of left operand is greater than the value of right operand. If yes, then the condition becomes true.	<code>(A &gt; B)</code> is not true.
<code>&lt;</code>	Checks if the value of left operand is less than the value of right operand. If yes, then the condition becomes true.	<code>(A &lt; B)</code> is true.
<code>&gt;=</code>	Checks if the value of left operand is greater than or equal to the value of right operand. If yes, then the condition becomes true.	<code>(A &gt;= B)</code> is not true.

# TOPS Technologies

<=	Checks if the value of left operand is less than or equal to the value of right operand. If yes, then the condition becomes true.	(A <= B) is true.
----	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------

Program:

```
#include <stdio.h>

void main() {

 int a = 21;
 int b = 10;
 int c ;

 if(a == b) {
 printf("Line 1 - a is equal to b\n");
 } else {
 printf("Line 1 - a is not equal to b\n");
 }

 if (a < b) {
 printf("Line 2 - a is less than b\n");
 } else {
 printf("Line 2 - a is not less than b\n");
 }

 if (a > b) {
 printf("Line 3 - a is greater than b\n");
 } else {
 printf("Line 3 - a is not greater than b\n");
 }

 /* Lets change value of a and b */
 a = 5;
 b = 20;

 if (a <= b) {
 printf("Line 4 - a is either less than or equal to b\n");
 }

 if (b >= a) {
 printf("Line 5 - b is either greater than or equal to b\n");
 }
}
```

Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\relationalop.exe
Line 1 - a is not equal to b
Line 2 - a is not less than b
Line 3 - a is greater than b
Line 4 - a is either less than or equal to b
Line 5 - b is either greater than or equal to b

Process exited after 0.04777 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```

## Logical Operators

Following table shows all the logical operators supported by C language. Assume variable **A** holds 1 and variable **B** holds 0, then –

Operator	Description	Example
&&	Called Logical AND operator. If both the operands are non-zero, then the condition becomes true.	(A && B) is false.
	Called Logical OR Operator. If any of the two operands is non-zero, then the condition becomes true.	(A    B) is true.
!	Called Logical NOT Operator. It is used to reverse the logical state of its operand. If a condition is true, then Logical NOT operator will make it false.	!(A && B) is true.

Program:

```
#include <stdio.h>
void main() {

 int a = 5;
 int b = 20;
 int c ;

 if (a && b) {
 printf("Line 1 - Condition is true\n");
 }

 if (a || b) {
 printf("Line 2 - Condition is true\n");
 }

 /* lets change the value of a and b */
 a = 0;
 b = 10;

 if (a && b) {
 printf("Line 3 - Condition is true\n");
 } else {
 printf("Line 3 - Condition is not true\n");
 }

 if (!(a && b)) {
 printf("Line 4 - Condition is true\n");
 }
}
```

Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\logicalop.exe
Line 1 - Condition is true
Line 2 - Condition is true
Line 3 - Condition is not true
Line 4 - Condition is true

Process exited after 0.04587 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```

# TOPS Technologies

## Bitwise Operators

Bitwise operator works on bits and perform bit-by-bit operation. The truth tables for **&**, **|**, and **^** is as follows –

p	q	p & q	p   q	p ^ q
0	0	0	0	0
0	1	0	1	1
1	1	1	1	0
1	0	0	1	1

Assume A = 60 and B = 13 in binary format, they will be as follows –

A = 0011 1100

B = 0000 1101

-----  
A&B = 0000 1100

A|B = 0011 1101

A^B = 0011 0001

$\sim$ A = 1100 0011

The following table lists the bitwise operators supported by C. Assume variable 'A' holds 60 and variable 'B' holds 13, then –

Operator	Description	Example
&	Binary AND Operator copies a bit to the result if it exists in both operands.	$(A \& B) = 12$ , i.e., 0000 1100
	Binary OR Operator copies a bit if it exists in either operand.	$(A   B) = 61$ , i.e.,

# TOPS Technologies

		0011 1101
$\wedge$	Binary XOR Operator copies the bit if it is set in one operand but not both.  	$(A \wedge B) = 49$ , i.e., 0011 0001
$\sim$	Binary One's Complement Operator is unary and has the effect of 'flipping' bits.	$(\sim A) = \sim(60)$ , i.e., - 0111101
$<<$	Binary Left Shift Operator. The left operand's value is moved left by the number of bits specified by the right operand.	$A << 2 = 240$ i.e., 1111 0000
$>>$	Binary Right Shift Operator. The left operand's value is moved right by the number of bits specified by the right operand.	$A >> 2 = 15$ i.e., 0000 1111

# TOPS Technologies

---

Program:

```
#include <stdio.h>

void main() {

 unsigned int a = 60; /* 60 = 0011 1100 */
 unsigned int b = 13; /* 13 = 0000 1101 */
 int c = 0;

 c = a & b; /* 12 = 0000 1100 */
 printf("Line 1 - Value of c is %d\n", c);

 c = a | b; /* 61 = 0011 1101 */
 printf("Line 2 - Value of c is %d\n", c);

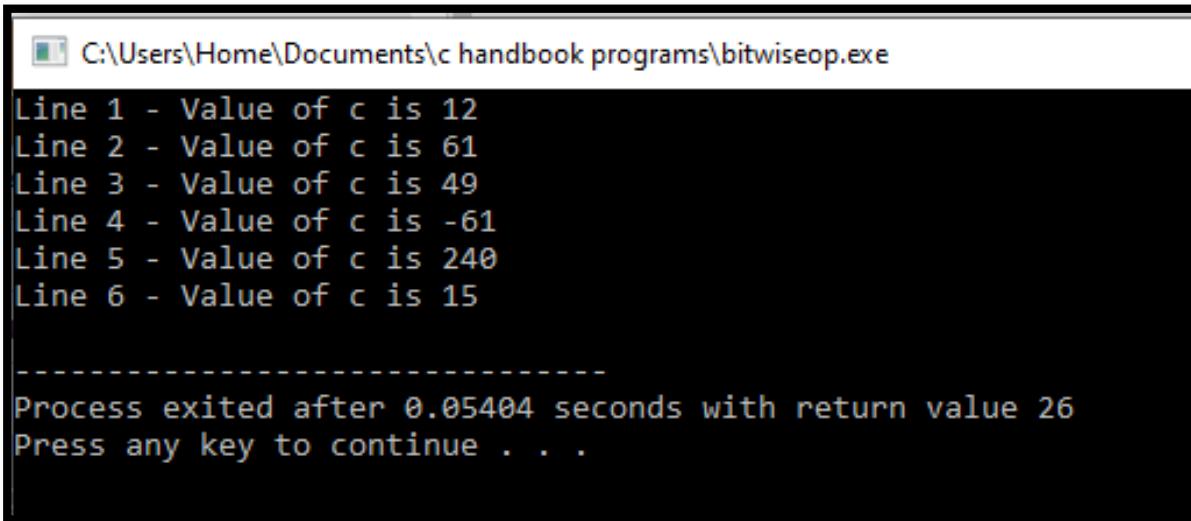
 c = a ^ b; /* 49 = 0011 0001 */
 printf("Line 3 - Value of c is %d\n", c);

 c = ~a; /* -61 = 1100 0011 */
 printf("Line 4 - Value of c is %d\n", c);

 c = a << 2; /* 240 = 1111 0000 */
 printf("Line 5 - Value of c is %d\n", c);

 c = a >> 2; /* 15 = 0000 1111 */
 printf("Line 6 - Value of c is %d\n", c);
}
```

Output:



```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\bitwiseop.exe

Line 1 - Value of c is 12
Line 2 - Value of c is 61
Line 3 - Value of c is 49
Line 4 - Value of c is -61
Line 5 - Value of c is 240
Line 6 - Value of c is 15

Process exited after 0.05404 seconds with return value 26
Press any key to continue . . .
```

## Assignment Operators

The following table lists the assignment operators supported by the C language –

Operator	Description	Example
=	Simple assignment operator. Assigns values from right side operands to left side operand	$C = A + B$ will assign the value of $A + B$ to $C$
+=	Add AND assignment operator. It adds the right operand to the left operand and assign the result to the left operand.	$C += A$ is equivalent to $C = C + A$
-=	Subtract AND assignment operator. It subtracts the right operand from the left operand and assigns the result to the left operand.	$C -= A$ is equivalent to $C = C - A$
*=	Multiply AND assignment operator. It multiplies the right operand with the left operand and assigns the result to the left operand.	$C *= A$ is equivalent to $C = C * A$
/=	Divide AND assignment operator. It divides the left operand with the right operand and assigns the result to the left operand.	$C /= A$ is equivalent to $C = C / A$
%=	Modulus AND assignment operator. It takes modulus using two operands and assigns the result to the left operand.	$C %= A$ is equivalent to $C = C \% A$

# TOPS Technologies

<<=	Left shift AND assignment operator.	C <<= 2 is same as C = C << 2
>>=	Right shift AND assignment operator.	C >>= 2 is same as C = C >> 2
&=	Bitwise AND assignment operator.	C &= 2 is same as C = C & 2
^=	Bitwise exclusive OR and assignment operator.	C ^= 2 is same as C = C ^ 2
=	Bitwise inclusive OR and assignment operator.	C  = 2 is same as C = C   2

Program:

```
#include <stdio.h>
void main() {

 int a = 21;
 int c ;
 c = a;
 printf("Line 1 - = Operator Example, Value of c = %d\n", c);

 c += a;
 printf("Line 2 - += Operator Example, Value of c = %d\n", c);

 c -= a;
 printf("Line 3 - -= Operator Example, Value of c = %d\n", c);

 c *= a;
 printf("Line 4 - *= Operator Example, Value of c = %d\n", c);
}
```

```
c /= a;
printf("Line 5 - /= Operator Example, Value of c = %d\n", c);

c = 200;
c %= a;
printf("Line 6 - %= Operator Example, Value of c = %d\n", c);

c <=> 2;
printf("Line 7 - <>= Operator Example, Value of c = %d\n", c);

c >>= 2;
printf("Line 8 - >>= Operator Example, Value of c = %d\n", c);

c &= 2;
printf("Line 9 - &= Operator Example, Value of c = %d\n", c);

c ^= 2;
printf("Line 10 - ^= Operator Example, Value of c = %d\n", c);
}

}
```

Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\assignmentop.exe
Line 1 - = Operator Example, Value of c = 21
Line 2 - += Operator Example, Value of c = 42
Line 3 - -= Operator Example, Value of c = 21
Line 4 - *= Operator Example, Value of c = 441
Line 5 - /= Operator Example, Value of c = 21
Line 6 - = Operator Example, Value of c = 11
Line 7 - <>= Operator Example, Value of c = 44
Line 8 - >>= Operator Example, Value of c = 11
Line 9 - &= Operator Example, Value of c = 2
Line 10 - ^= Operator Example, Value of c = 0
Line 11 - |= Operator Example, Value of c = 2

Process exited after 0.102 seconds with return value 46
Press any key to continue . . .
```

# TOPS Technologies

## Misc Operators ↪ sizeof & ternary

Besides the operators discussed above, there are a few other important operators including **sizeof** and **? :** supported by the C Language.

Operator	Description	Example
sizeof()	Returns the size of a variable.	sizeof(a), where a is integer, will return 4.
&	Returns the address of a variable.	&a; returns the actual address of the variable.
*	Pointer to a variable.	*a;
? :	Conditional Expression.	If Condition is true ? then value X : otherwise value Y

Program:

```
#include <stdio.h>
void main() {

 int a = 4;
 short b;
 double c;
 int* ptr;

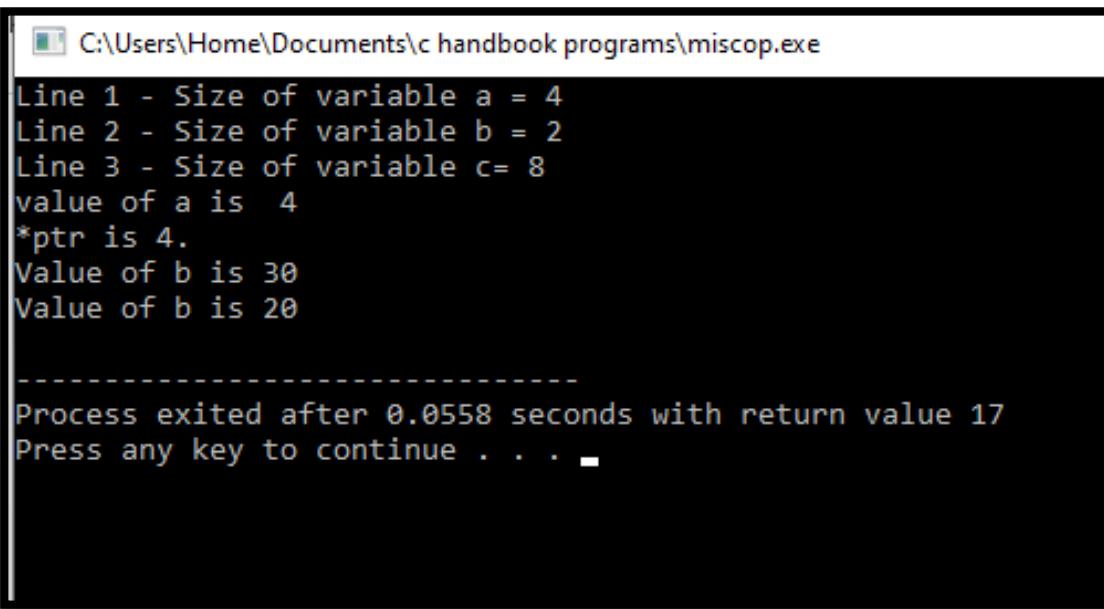
 /* example of sizeof operator */
 printf("Line 1 - Size of variable a = %d\n", sizeof(a));
 printf("Line 2 - Size of variable b = %d\n", sizeof(b));
 printf("Line 3 - Size of variable c= %d\n", sizeof(c));

 /* example of & and * operators */
 ptr = &a; /* 'ptr' now contains the address of 'a'*/
 printf("value of a is %d\n", a);
 printf("*ptr is %d.\n", *ptr);

 /* example of ternary operator */
 a = 10;
 b = (a == 1) ? 20: 30;
```

```
printf("Value of b is %d\n", b);
b = (a == 10) ? 20: 30;
printf("Value of b is %d\n", b);
}
```

Output:



```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\miscop.exe
Line 1 - Size of variable a = 4
Line 2 - Size of variable b = 2
Line 3 - Size of variable c= 8
value of a is 4
*ptr is 4.
Value of b is 30
Value of b is 20

Process exited after 0.0558 seconds with return value 17
Press any key to continue . . .
```

## Operators Precedence in C

Operator precedence determines the grouping of terms in an expression and decides how an expression is evaluated. Certain operators have higher precedence than others; for example, the multiplication operator has a higher precedence than the addition operator.

For example,  $x = 7 + 3 * 2$ ; here,  $x$  is assigned 13, not 20 because operator  $*$  has a higher precedence than  $+$ , so it first gets multiplied with  $3*2$  and then adds into 7.

Here, operators with the highest precedence appear at the top of the table, those with the lowest appear at the bottom. Within an expression, higher precedence operators will be evaluated first.

Category	Operator	Associativity
Postfix	() [] -> . ++ --	Left to right
Unary	+ - ! ~ ++ -- (type)* & sizeof	Right to left

# TOPS Technologies

Multiplicative	* / %	Left to right
Additive	+ -	Left to right
Shift	<< >>	Left to right
Relational	< <= > >=	Left to right
Equality	== !=	Left to right
Bitwise AND	&	Left to right
Bitwise XOR	^	Left to right
Bitwise OR		Left to right
Logical AND	&&	Left to right
Logical OR		Left to right
Conditional	?:	Right to left
Assignment	= += -= *= /= %= >>= <<= &= ^=  =	Right to left
Comma	,	Left to right

# TOPS Technologies

Program:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main() {

 int a = 20;
 int b = 10;
 int c = 15;
 int d = 5;
 int e;

 e = (a + b) * c / d; // (30 * 15) / 5
 printf("Value of (a + b) * c / d is : %d\n", e);

 e = ((a + b) * c) / d; // (30 * 15) / 5
 printf("Value of ((a + b) * c) / d is : %d\n", e);

 e = (a + b) * (c / d); // (30) * (15/5)
 printf("Value of (a + b) * (c / d) is : %d\n", e);

 e = a + (b * c) / d; // 20 + (150/5)
 printf("Value of a + (b * c) / d is : %d\n", e);

 return 0;
}
```

Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\precedenceop.exe
Value of (a + b) * c / d is : 90
Value of ((a + b) * c) / d is : 90
Value of (a + b) * (c / d) is : 90
Value of a + (b * c) / d is : 50

Process exited after 0.07936 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```

## Evaluation of Expressions

Expressions are evaluated using an assignment statement of the form

Variable = expression;

Variable is any valid C variable name. When the statement is encountered, the expression is evaluated first and then replaces the previous value of the variable on the left hand side. All variables used in the expression must be assigned values before evaluation is attempted.

Example of evaluation statements are

```
x = a * b - c
y = b / c * a
z = a - b / c + d;
```

The following program illustrates the effect of presence of parenthesis in expressions.

```
main ()
{
float a, b, c x, y, z;
a = 9;
b = 12;
c = 3;
x = a - b / 3 + c * 2 - 1;
y = a - b / (3 + c) * (2 - 1);
z = a - (b / (3 + c) * 2) - 1;
printf (-x = % fnl,x);
printf (-y = % fnl,y);
printf (-z = % fnl,z);
}
```

## Output

```
x = 10.00
y = 7.00
z = 4.00
```

## Precedence in Arithmetic Operators

An arithmetic expression without parenthesis will be evaluated from left to right using the rules of precedence of operators. There are two distinct priority levels of arithmetic operators in C.

High priority \* / % ; Low priority + -

Rules for evaluation of expression

1. First parenthesized sub expression left to right are evaluated.
2. If parenthesis is nested, the evaluation begins with the innermost sub expression.
3. The precedence rule is applied in determining the order of application of operators in evaluating sub expressions.
4. The associability rule is applied when two or more operators of the same precedence level appear in the sub expression.
5. Arithmetic expressions are evaluated from left to right using the rules of precedence.
6. When Parenthesis is used, the expressions within parenthesis assume highest priority.

## Type conversion:

Whilst we are dealing with arithmetic we want to remind you about something that everyone learns at junior school but then we forget it. Consider the following calculation:

$$a=10.0 + 2.0 * 5.0 - 6.0 / 2.0$$

What is the answer?

If you think its 27 go to the bottom of the class! Perhaps you got that answer by following each instruction as if it was being typed into a calculator.

In the above calculation the multiplication and division parts will be evaluated first and then the addition and subtraction parts. This gives an answer of 17.

## Implicit Conversion:

To avoid confusion use brackets. The following are two different calculations:

$$a=10.0 + (2.0 * 5.0) - (6.0 / 2.0)$$

$$a=(10.0 + 2.0) * (5.0 - 6.0) / 2.0$$

You can freely mix int, float and double variables in expressions. In nearly all cases the lower precision values are converted to the highest precision values used in the expression. For example, the expression  $f*i$ , where  $f$  is a float and  $i$  is an int, is evaluated by converting the int to a float and then multiplying. The final result is, of course, a float but this may be assigned to another data type and the conversion will be made automatically. If you assign to a lower precision type then the value is truncated and not rounded.

In other words, in nearly all cases you can ignore the problems of converting between types.

This is very reasonable but more surprising is the fact that the data type char can also be freely mixed with ints, floats and doubles. This will shock any programmer who has used another language, as it's another example of C getting us closer than is customary to the way the machine works. A character is represented as an ASCII or some other code in the range 0 to 255, and if you want you can use this integer code value in arithmetic. Another way of thinking about this is that a char variable is just a single byte integer variable that can hold a number in the range 0 to 255, which can optionally be interpreted as a character.

## Explicit Conversion

Many times there may arise a situation where we want to force a type conversion in a way that is different from automatic conversion.

Consider for example the calculation of number of female and male students in a class

female\_employee

Ratio = -----

male\_employee

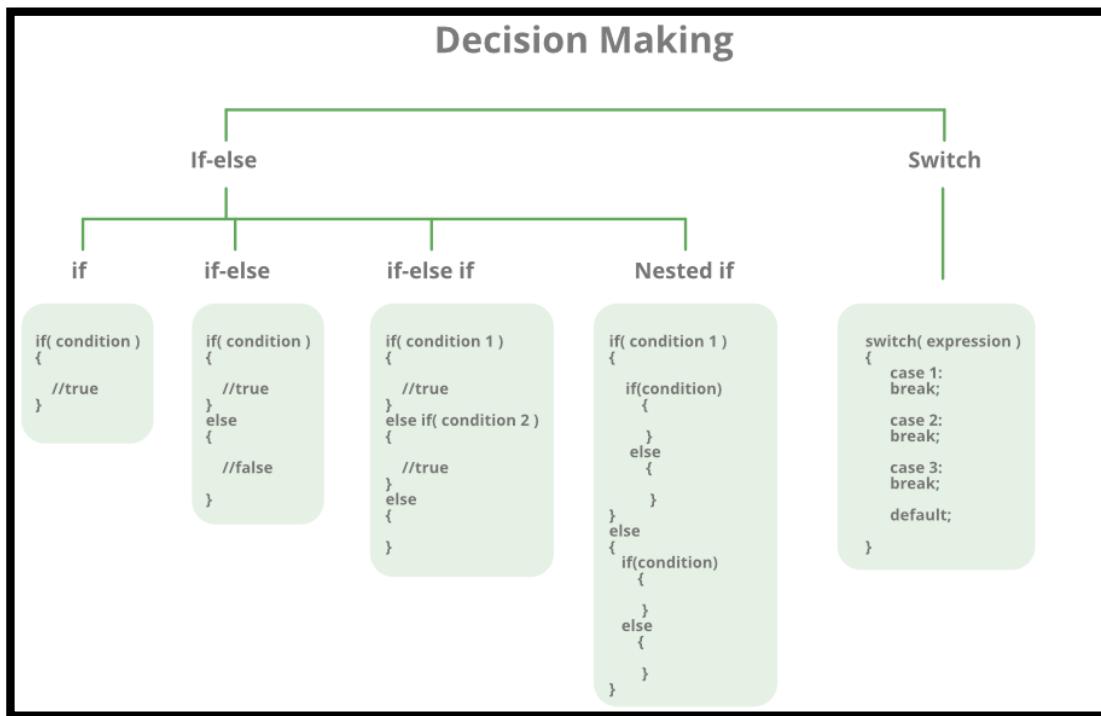
Since if female employee and male employee are declared as integers, the decimal part will be rounded off and its ratio will represent a wrong figure. This problem can be solved by converting locally one of the variables to the floating point as shown below.

Ratio = (float) female\_employee / male\_employee

The operator float converts the female\_employee to floating point for the purpose of evaluation of the expression

## Decision making and branching statements

C language provides statements that can alter the flow of a sequence of instructions. These statements are called control statements. These statements help to jump from one part of the program to another.



- 1) if statement.
- 2) if else statement.
- 3) Nested if statement.
- 4) Else if ladder statement.
- 5) Switch statement.

### 1) if statement.

It is very frequently used in decision making and allowing the flow of program execution. The If structure has the following syntax

The condition is logical operator which are used in the condition statement. The condition part should not end with a semicolon, since the condition and statement should be put together as a single statement. If condition is true the block will be execute.

Program:

```
#include<stdio.h>
void main()
{
int age=90;
if(age>18)
{
printf("\n u are eligible for
watting..");
}
}
```

Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\if.exe

u are eligible for watting..

Process exited after 0.2044 seconds with return value 30
Press any key to continue . . .
```

## 2) if..else statement:

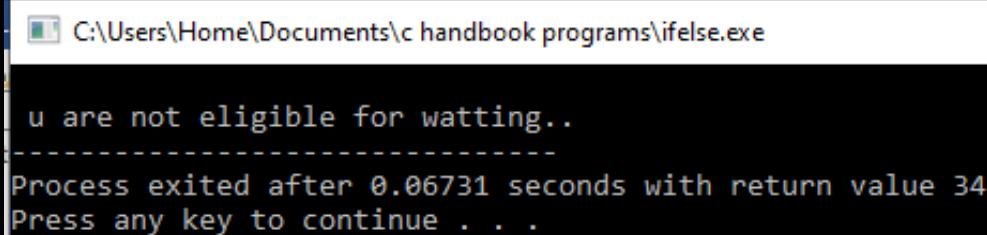
If the result of the condition is true, then program statement 1 is executed, otherwise program statement 2 will be executed. If any case either program statement 1 is executed or program statement 2 is executed. Both statement will not execute at a time.

Program:

```
#include<stdio.h>
void main(){
 int age=15;
 if(age>18) //example of relational operator.
 {
 printf("\n u are eligible for watting..");
 }
}
```

```
else
{
printf("\n u are not eligible for
watting..");
}
```

Output:



```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\ifelse.exe

u are not eligible for watting..

Process exited after 0.06731 seconds with return value 34
Press any key to continue . . .
```

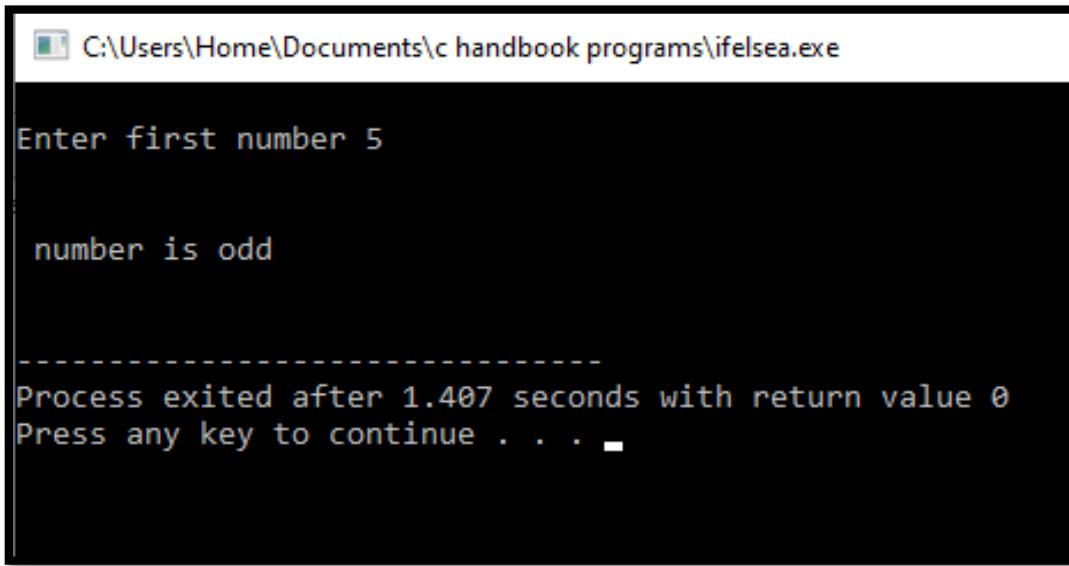
In above example if the age is greater than 18 then student is eligible. Here age is 15 so else part will be executed.

An example program showing the relational operator.

```
#include <stdio.h>
void main ()
{
int num1, num2;
printf("\nEnter first number ");
scanf("%d",&num1);

if (num1%2==0)
printf("\n\nnumber is even\n\n");
else
printf("\n\nnumber is odd \n\n");
}
```

Output:



```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\ifelsea.exe

Enter first number 5

number is odd

Process exited after 1.407 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . . -
```

### 3) Nested if statement:

The if statement may itself contain another if statement is known as nested if statement.

**Syntax:**

here if one condition is true then inner condition will be execute. So one block of code will only be executed if two conditions are true. Condition 1 is tested first and then condition 2 is tested. The second if condition is nested in the first. The second if condition is tested only when the first condition is true else the program flow will skip to the corresponding else statement.

**For example:**

```
#include<stdio.h>
void main()
{
 int a,b,c;
 printf ("Enter three numbers : ");
 scanf ("%d %d %d", &a, &b, &c);
 if (a > b)
 {
 if(a>c){
 printf("\n %d is greater",a);
 }
 }
```

```
else{
 printf("\n %d is greater",c);
}
}

else{
 printf("\n %d is greater",b);
}
}
```

## Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\nestifelse.exe
Enter three numbers : 5
4
8
8 is greater

Process exited after 2.645 seconds with return value 14
Press any key to continue . . .
```

in above if a is greater b then it check to c.otherwise b is greater message will be display.

## 4) Else if ladder:

When many conditions have to be checked we may use the ladder else if statement which takes the following general form.

The conditions are check from the top to down. As soon on the true condition is found, the statement associated with it is executed and the control is transferred to the statement – x (skipping the rest of the ladder. When all the condition becomes false, the final else containing the default statement will be executed. )

**For example:**

```
#include <stdio.h>
void main ()
{
float per ;
printf ("Enter marks\n") ;
scanf ("%f", &per) ;
if(per>100)
{
 printf("Value Entered Greater than 100%. Please Enter Valid Value.");
}
else if (per <= 100 && per >= 70)
{
 printf ("\n Distinction");
}
else if (per >= 60)
{
 printf("\n First class") ;
}
else if (per >= 50)
{
 printf ("\n second class");
}
else if (per >= 35)
{
 printf ("\n pass class");
}
else
{
 printf ("Fail");
}
```

## Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\elseifladder.exe
Enter marks
45

pass class

Process exited after 4.689 seconds with return value 12
Press any key to continue . . . -
```

## 5) Switch statement

The switch statement allows a program to select one statement for execution out of a set of alternatives. During the execution of the switch statement only one of the possible statements will be executed the remaining statements will be skipped. The usage of multiple If else statement increases the complexity of the program since when the number of If else statements increase it affects the readability of the program and makes it difficult to follow the program. The switch statement removes these disadvantages by using a simple and straight forward approach. we can't use float datatype in switch and also not use relational and logical operator.

The switch statement is check the control expression is evaluated first and the value is compared with the case label values in the given order. If the label matches with the value of the expression then the control is transferred directly to the group of statements which follow the label. If none of the statements matches then the statement against the default is executed. The default statement is optional in switch statement.

**For example:**

```
#include<stdio.h>
void main(){
 int choice;
 printf("1.sunday,2.monday,3.tuesday,4.wednesday,5.thursday,6.friday,7.saturday");
 printf("\nEnter choice between 1 to 7 : ");
 scanf("\n %d",&choice);
 printf("entered choice is:%d",choice);

 switch(choice)
 {
 case 1:
 printf("sunday");
 break;
```

```
case 2:
 printf("monday");
 break;

case 3:
 printf("tuesday");
 break;

case 4:
 printf("wednsday");
 break;

case 5:
 printf("thursday");
 break;

case 6:
 printf("friday");
 break;

case 7:
 printf("saturday");
 break;

default:
 printf("please enter valid choice");
}
}
```

Output:

```
1.sunday,2.monday,3.tuesday,4.wednsday,5.thursday,6.friday,7.saturday
enter choice between 1 to 7 : 5
thursday
```

In above example ch variable first check the case `_a` if case match execute that statement block and break means next statements are not execute.break is used when jump the statement or break the switch statement.here case i block will be execute.

## Goto statement:

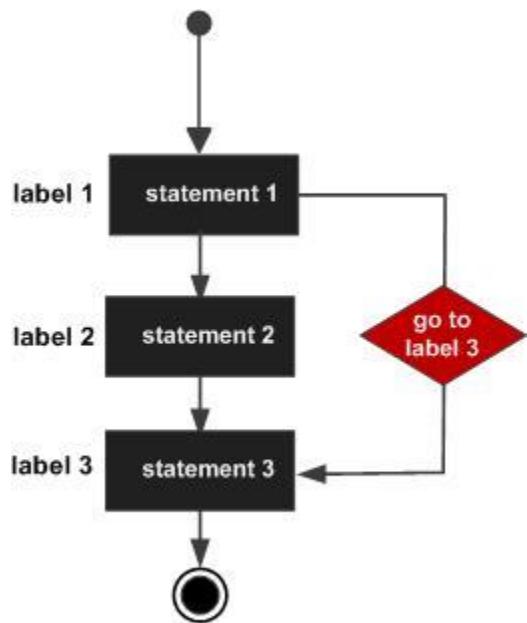
These statement is simple statement used to transfer the program control unconditionally from one statement to another statement. Although it might not be essential to use the goto statement in a highly structured language like C, there may be occasions when the use of goto is desirable.

## The GOTO statement:

The goto requires a label in order to identify the place where the branch is to be made. A label is a valid variable name followed by a colon.

The label is placed immediately before the statement where the control is to be transformed.

There are main two types of goto statement.forward goto and backword goto.



In forward goto the part of statement or program will be skip.

Syntax of forward goto:

goto label;

.....

Statement;

.....

Label:

Statement;

For example:

```
goto stop;
printf(-\n 1 statement..||);
printf(-\n 2 statement..||);
stop:
printf(-\n last statement..||);
In above example 1st and 2nd statement will be skip.
```

Now in backward goto statement use, we can repeat the statement.

Syntax of backward goto:

Label:  
.....

```
Statement;
.....
goto label;
```

**for example:**

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main () {

 /* local variable definition */
 int a = 10;

 /* do loop execution */
 LOOP:do {

 if(a == 15) {
 /* skip the iteration */
 a = a + 1;
 goto LOOP;
 }

 printf("value of a: %d\n", a);
 a++;

 }while(a < 20);

 return 0;
}
```

Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\goto.exe
value of a: 10
value of a: 11
value of a: 12
value of a: 13
value of a: 14
value of a: 16
value of a: 17
value of a: 18
value of a: 19

Process exited after 0.05124 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```

## Control Loops

### Decision making –Loop:

A loop means any statement repeat multiple times. A loop consists of two segments one known as body of the loop and other is the control statement. The control statement tests certain conditions and then directs the repeated execution of the statements contained in the body of the loop.

In looping process in general would include the following three steps

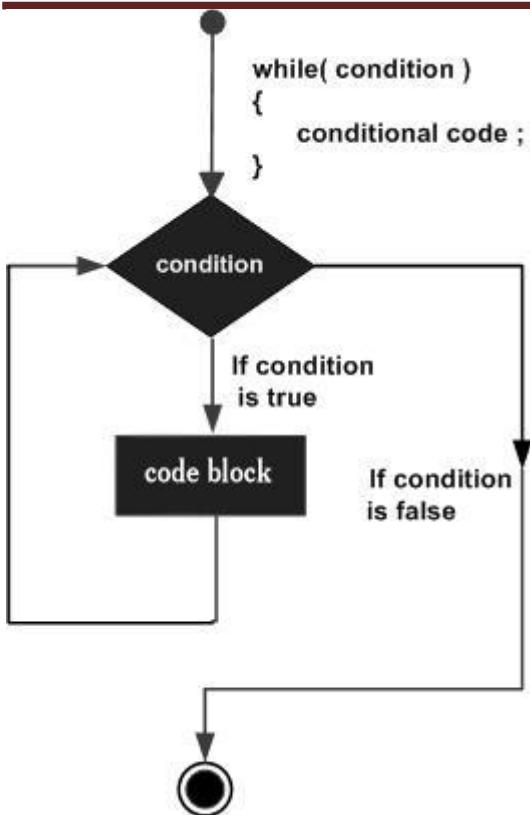
- 1) initialize counter
- 2) test or check that counter
- 3) upadte that counter

### Types of loops:

- 1)while loop
- 2)for loop
- 3)do while loop

#### 1)The While loop:

The while loop is entry control loop means in this loop we first check the condition, if condition is true then execute statements.



The general format of the while statement is: Initialization;  
while (test condition)

```

{
 //body of the loop
 Updation counter variable;
}

```

Here after the execution of the body, the test condition is once again evaluated and if it is true, the body is executed once again. This process of repeated execution of the body continues until the test condition finally becomes false and the control is transferred out of the loop.

For Example:

```

#include <stdio.h>
int main () {
 /* local variable definition */
 int a = 10;

 /* while loop execution */
 while(a < 20) {
 printf("value of a: %d\n", a);
 a++;
 }
 return 0;
}

```

Output:

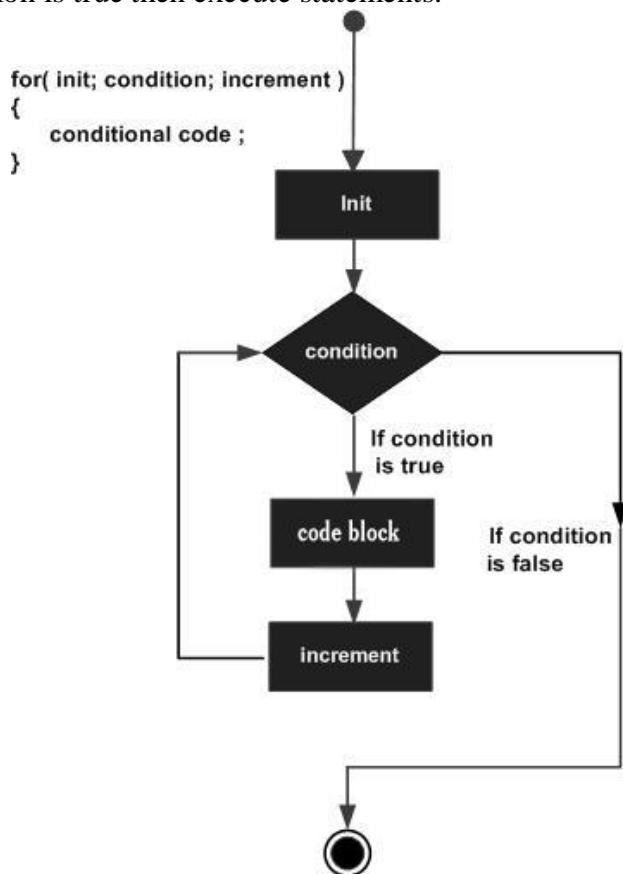
```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\while.exe

value of a: 10
value of a: 11
value of a: 12
value of a: 13
value of a: 14
value of a: 15
value of a: 16
value of a: 17
value of a: 18
value of a: 19

Process exited after 0.09538 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue
```

## 2)The for loop:

The for loop is also entry control loop means in this loop we first check the condition,if condition is true then execute statements.



# TOPS Technologies

---

The general format of the for statement is:

```
for (Initialization;test condition;updation counter variable)
{
 //body of the loop
}
```

Here after the execution of the body, the test condition is once again evaluated and if it is true, the body is executed once again. This process of repeated execution of the body continues until the test condition finally becomes false and the control is transferred out of the loop.

For example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

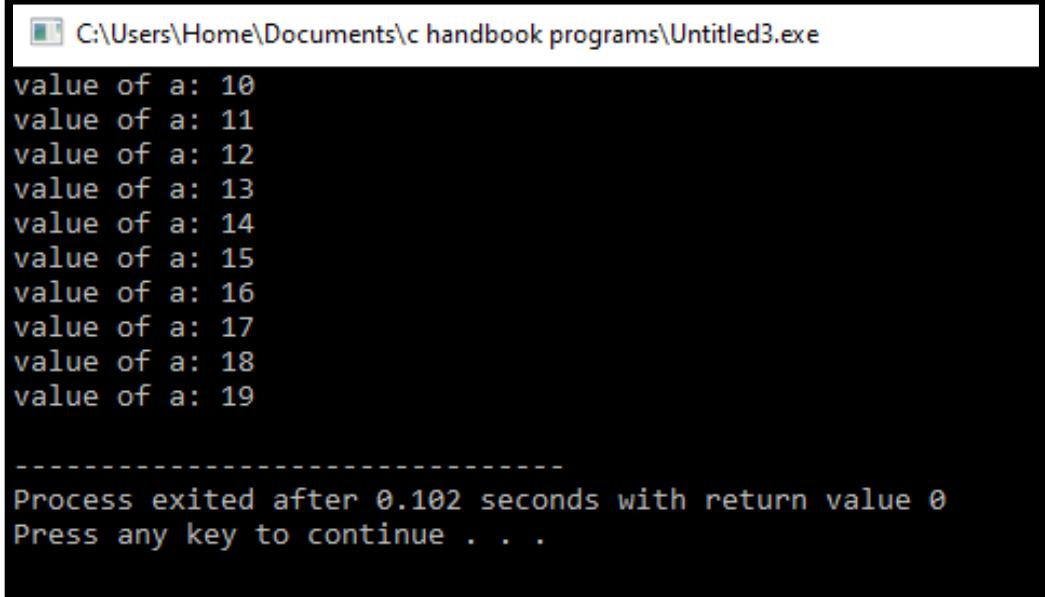
int main () {

 int a;

 /* for loop execution */
 for(a = 10; a < 20; a = a + 1){
 printf("value of a: %d\n", a);
 }

 return 0;
}
```

Output:

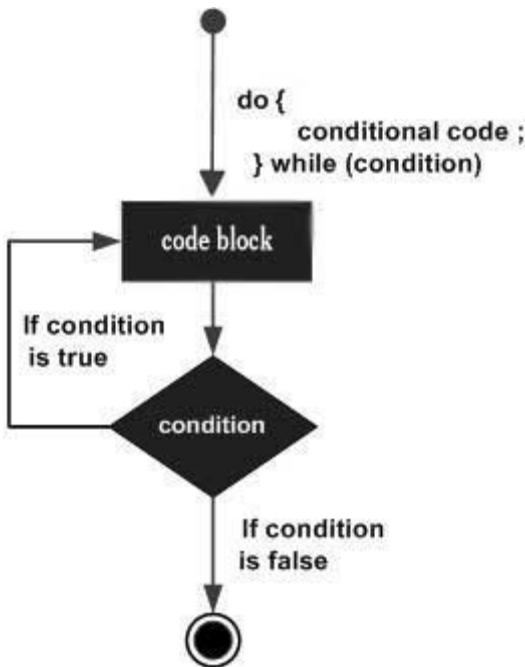


```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\Untitled3.exe
value of a: 10
value of a: 11
value of a: 12
value of a: 13
value of a: 14
value of a: 15
value of a: 16
value of a: 17
value of a: 18
value of a: 19

Process exited after 0.102 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```

### 3) The do while loop:

The do while loop tests at the bottom of the loop after executing the body of the loop os its exit control loop. Since the body of the loop is executed first and then the loop condition is checked we can be assured that the body of the loop is executed at least once.



The syntax of the do while loop is:

```
do
{
 statement;
 updation;
}
while(condition);
```

Here the statement is executed, then expression is evaluated. When the expression becomes false. When the expression becomes false the loop terminates.

For example:

```
#include <stdio.h>
int main () {
 /* local variable definition */
 int a = 10;
 /* do loop execution */
 do {
 printf("value of a: %d\n", a);
 a = a + 1;
 }while(a < 20);
 return 0;
}
```

Output:

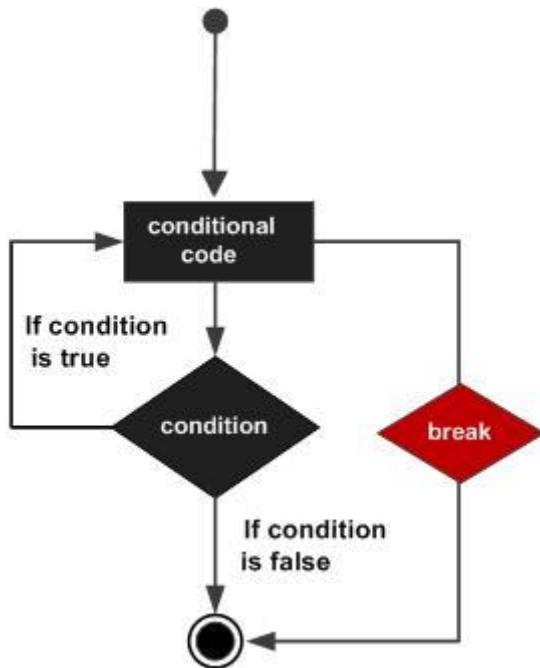
```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\Untitled3.exe
value of a: 10
value of a: 11
value of a: 12
value of a: 13
value of a: 14
value of a: 15
value of a: 16
value of a: 17
value of a: 18
value of a: 19

Process exited after 0.102 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```

## Using break and continue Within Loops

### Break

The break statement allows you to exit a loop from any point within its body, bypassing its normal termination expression. When the break statement is encountered inside a loop, the loop is immediately terminated, and program control resumes at the next statement following the loop. The break statement can be used with all three of C's loops.



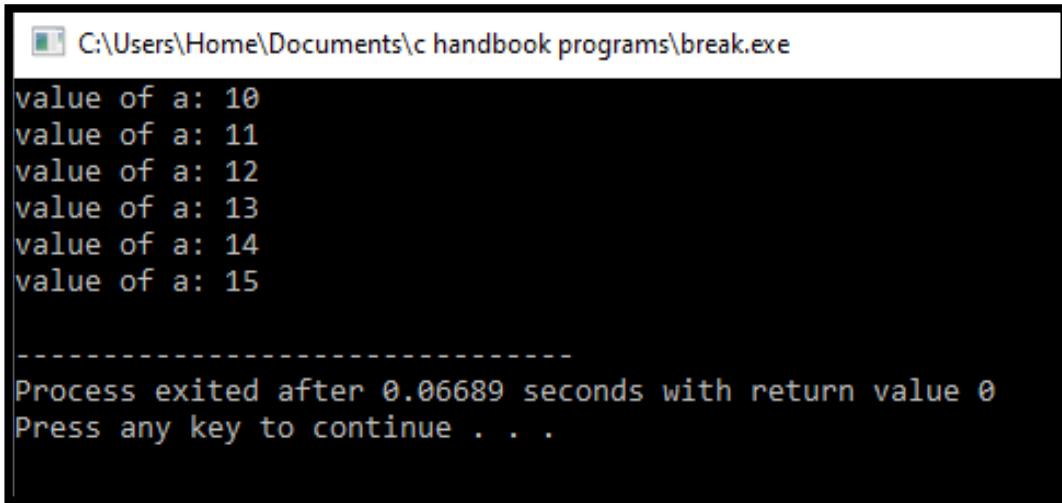
Here's an example of a use for the break statement:

```
#include <stdio.h>
int main () {
 /* local variable definition */
 int a = 10;

 /* do loop execution */
 do {
 printf("value of a: %d\n", a);
 a = a + 1;
 }while(a < 20);

 return 0;
}
```

Output:



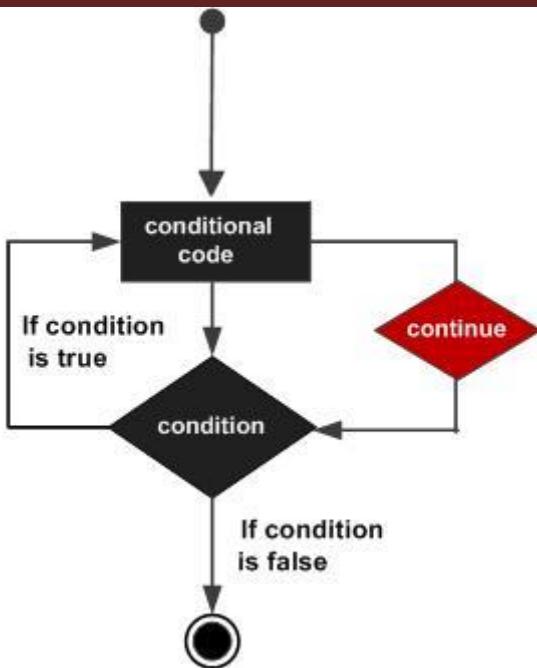
```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\break.exe
value of a: 10
value of a: 11
value of a: 12
value of a: 13
value of a: 14
value of a: 15

Process exited after 0.06689 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```

For above example , there is loop between 11 to 20 but using break statement we break loop after 15.

## Continue

The continue statement is somewhat the opposite of the break statement. It forces the next iteration of the loop to take place, skipping any code in between itself and the test condition of the loop. In while and do-while loops, a continue statement will cause control to go directly to the test condition and then continue the looping process. In the case of the for loop, the increment part of the loop continues.



For example:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main () {

 /* local variable definition */
 int a = 10;

 /* do loop execution */
 do {

 if(a == 15) {
 /* skip the iteration */
 a = a + 1;
 continue;
 }

 printf("value of a: %d\n", a);
 a++;

 } while(a < 20);

 return 0;
}
```

Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\continue.exe
value of a: 10
value of a: 11
value of a: 12
value of a: 13
value of a: 14
value of a: 16
value of a: 17
value of a: 18
value of a: 19

Process exited after 0.07064 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```

For above example , there is loop between 11 to 20 but using continue statement we skip a=15 and loop continue with a=16.

## Array:

There are times when we need to store a complete list of numbers or other data items. You could do this by creating as many individual variables as would be needed for the job, but this is a hard and tedious process.In C programming Array is solution of this.

An array have a common datatype ,common name with different values with continues memory allocation.So we can easily use each value with its name.

Array have 3 types:

- 1) one dimension array.
- 2) Two dimension array.
- 3) Multi dimension array.

### 1) one dimension array.

One dimension array is a continues memory allocation which have stored in memory like a row or like a column.

Declaration of 1D array:

```
Datatype array_name[array_size];
```

Here the type specifies the type of the elements that will be contained in the array, such as int ,float or char and the size indicates the maximum number of elements that can be stored.

For example:

```
int a[5];
```

in above example the first element is a[0] and the last a[4]. C programmer's always start counting at zero. The first array element is array[0] and the last is array[size-1].

### Initialize array at compile time:

# TOPS Technologies

We can initialize array element compile time and run time also.here the example of compoile time:

```
int a[5]={1,2,3,4,5};
```

in above example the compiler knows the array element so its called compile time array.the memory allocate like:

```
a[0] = 1;
a[1] = 2;
a[2] = 3;
a[3] = 4;
a[4] = 5;
```

## Initialize array at run time:

We can initialize array element at run time.means when program run the arrray value will initialize.user can enter value at run tme.here the example of compoile time:

```
main()
{
int a[5];
int i;
for(i =0;i < 5; ++i)
 scanf("%d",&a[i]);
for(i =4;i>=0;--i)
 printf("%d",a[i]);
}
```

The for loop and the array data type were more or less made for each other. The for loop can be used to generate a sequence of values to pick out and process each element in an array in turn.

An array of character variables is in no way different from an array of numeric variables, but programmers often like to think about them in a different way. For example, if you want to read in and reverse five characters you could use:

```
main()
{
char a[5];
int i;
for(i=0; i<5; ++i) scanf("%c",&a[i]);
for(i=4;i>=0;--i) printf("%c",a[i]);
}
```

Notice that the only difference, is the declared type of the array and the %c used to specify that the data is to be interpreted as a character in scanf and printf. The trouble with character arrays is that to use them as if they were text strings you have to remember how many characters they hold. In other words, if you declare a character array 40 elements long and store H E L L O in it you need to remember that after element 4 the array is empty. This is such a nuisance that C uses the simple convention that the end of a string of characters is marked by a null character. A null character is, as you might expect, the character with ASCII code 0.

## String input output using character array:

### Gets and puts function:

The gets function can be used to read a character string from the standard input device. The scanf

# TOPS Technologies

---

can also be used to achieve the function. The gets has the following form.

Character \_arr = gets();

Array name is a valid array name, that has been declared already and that possess the type char.

For example:

```
char arr[10];
arr= gets();
```

The puts function which is analogous to gets function can be used for writing character string at a time to the output terminal. The general form is

puts(array\_name);

for example:

```
puts (arr);
```

Displays the value stored in array arr to the standard screen.

## Two dimension array.

Two dimension array is a continuous memory allocation which have stored in memory like tabular format.means multiple row and multiple column format.

Declaration of 2D array:

```
Datatype array_name[row_size][column_size];
```

Here the type specifies the type of the elements that will be contained in the array, such as int ,float or char and the size indicates the maximum number of elements that can be stored.first subscribe is used for row size and second subscribe is used for column size.

For example:

```
int b[2][3];
```

in above example array name is b and the total row size is 2 and column size is 3.  
the first element is b[0][0] and the last b[1][2].

## Initialize array at compile time:

We can initialize array element compile time and run time also.here the example of compile time:

```
int b[2][3]={1,2,3,4,5,6};
```

in above example the compiler knows the array element so its called compile time array.the memory allocate like:

```
b[0][0] = 1;
b[0][1] = 2;
b[0][3] = 3;
b[1][0] = 4;
b[1][1] = 5;
```

## Initialize array at run time:

We can initialize array element at run time.means when program run the array value will initialize.user can enter value at run tme.here the example of compoile time:

```
main()
{
int a[2][2],i,j;
for(i =0;i < 2; ++i)
 for(j =0;j < 2; ++j)
 scanf("%d",&a[i][j]);
for(i =0;i < 2; ++i)
 for(j =0;j < 2; ++j)
 printf("%d",a[i][j]);
}
```

In above example 2 number of rows and 2 number of column. At run time user can input the data and also display that data. Here 2 by 2 matrix create.2D array also called matrix.

## Multidimensional arrays:

C allows arrays of three or more dimensions. The compiler determines the maximum number of dimension. The general form of a multidimensional array declaration is:

```
date_type array_name[s1][s2][s3].....[sn];
```

Where s is the size of the ith dimension. Some examples are:

```
int survey[3][5][12];
float table[5][4][5][3];
```

Survey is a 3 dimensional array declared to contain 180 integer elements. Similarly table is a four dimensional array containing 300 elements of floating point type.

## Handling of Character String

In this tutorial you will learn about Initializing Strings, Reading Strings from the terminal, Writing strings to screen, Arithmetic operations on characters, String operations (string.h), Strlen() function, strcat() function, strcmp function, strncmp() function, strcpy() function, strlwr() function, strrev() function and strupr() function.

In C language, strings are stored in an array of char type along with the null terminating character "\0" at the end. In other words to create a string in C you create an array of chars and set each element in the array to a char value that makes up the string. When sizing the string array you need to add plus one to the actual size of the string to make space for the null terminating character, "\0"

Syntax to declare a string in C:

```
char fname[4];
```

The above statement declares a string called fname that can take up to 3 characters. It can be indexed just as a regular array as well.

```
fname[] = {'t','w','o'};
```

Character	t	W	o	\0
ASCII Code	116	119	41	0

The last character is the null character having ASCII value zero.

## Initializing Strings

To initialize our fname string from above to store the name Brian,

```
char fname[31] = {"Purvi"};
```

You can observe from the above statement that initializing a string is same as with any array. However we also need to surround the string with quotes.

## Writing Strings to the Screen

To write strings to the terminal, we use a file stream known as stdout. The most common function to use for writing to stdout in C is the printf function, defined as follows:

```
int printf(const char *format, ...);
```

To print out a prompt for the user you can:

```
printf("Please type a name: \n");
```

The above statement prints the prompt in the quotes and moves the cursor to the next line.

If you wanted to print a string from a variable, such as our fname string above you can do this:

```
printf("First Name: %s", fname);
```

You can insert more than one variable, hence the "..." in the prototype for printf but this is sufficient. Use %s to insert a string and then list the variables that go to each %s in your string

# TOPS Technologies

---

you are printing. It goes in order of first to last. Let's use a first and last name printing example to show this:

```
printf("Full Name: %s %s", fname, lname);
```

The first name would be displayed first and the last name would be after the space between the %s's.

## Reading Strings from the Terminal

When we read a string from the terminal we read from a file stream known as stdin. \*nix users are probably familiar with this, it's how you can type a program name into the terminal and pass it arguments also.

Say we want to allow the user to enter a name from stdin. Aside from taking the name as a command line argument, we can use the scanf function which has the following prototype:

```
int scanf(const char *format, ...);
```

Note the similarity to printf.

Quick example to tie the last few sections together.

```
#include <stdio.h>
void main() {
 char fname[30];
 char lname[30];
 printf("Type first name:\n");
 scanf("%s", fname);

 printf("Type last name:\n");
 scanf("%s", lname);

 printf("Your name is: %s %s\n", fname, lname);
}
```

We declare two strings fname and lname. Then we use the printf function to prompt the user for a first name. The scanf function takes the input from stdin and automatically exits once the user presses enter. Then we repeat the above sequence except using the last name this time. Finally we print the full name that was typed back to stdout. Should look something like this:

Type First Name:

purvi

Type Last Name:

pandya

Your Name is : purvi pandya

## Arithmetic Operations on Strings

Characters in C can be used just like integers when used with arithmetic operators. This is nice, for example, in low memory applications because unsigned chars take up less memory than do regular integers as long as your value does not exceed the rather limited range of an unsigned char.

Let us cut to our example,

```
#include <stdio.h>
void main() {
 unsigned char val1 = 20;
```

```
unsigned char val2 = 30;
int answer;

printf("%d\n", val1);
printf("%d\n", val2);

answer = val1 + val2;
printf("%d + %d = %d\n", val1, val2, answer);

val1 = 'a';
answer = val1 + val2;

printf("%d + %d = %d\n", val1, val2, answer);
}
```

First we make two unsigned character variables and give them (rather low) number values. We then add them together and put the answer into an integer variable. We can do this without a cast because characters are an alphanumeric data type. Next we set var1 to an expected character value, the letter lowercase a. Now this next addition adds 97 to 30, why?

Because the ASCII value of lowercase a is 97. So it adds 97 to 30, the current value in var2. Notice it did not require casting the characters to integers or having the compiler complain. This is because the compiler knows when to automatically change between characters and integers or other numeric types.

## String Operations

Character arrays are a special type of array that uses a "\0" character at the end. As such it has its own header library called string.h that contains built-in functions for performing operations on these specific array types.

You must include the string header file in your programs to utilize this functionality.

```
#include <string.h>
```

We will cover the essential functions from this library over the next few sections.

## Length of a String

Use the strlen function to get the length of a string minus the null terminating character.

```
int strlen(string);
```

If we had a string, and called the strlen function on it we could get its length.

```
char fname[30] = {"Bob"};
int length = strlen(fname);
```

This would set length to 3.

## Concatenation of Strings

The strcat function appends one string to another.

```
char *strcat(string1, string2);
```

The first string gets the second string appended to it. So for example to print a full name from a first and last name string we could do the following:

```
char fname[30] = {"Bob"};
```

# TOPS Technologies

---

```
char lname[30] = {"by"};
printf("%s", strcat(fname, lname));
```

The output of this snippet would be "Bobby."

## Compare Two Strings

Sometimes you want to determine if two strings are the same. For this we have the strcmp function.

```
int strcmp(string1, string2);
```

The return value indicates how the 2 strings relate to each other. If they are equal strcmp returns 0. The value will be negative if string1 is less than string2, or positive in the opposite case.

For example if we add the following line to the end of our getname.c program:

```
printf("%d", strcmp(fname, lname));
```

When run on a Linux computer with the following first and last name combinations, the program will yield the following output.

First name: Bob, last name: bob, output: -1.

First name: bob, last name: Bob, output 1.

First name: Bob, last name: Bob, output 0.

## Compare Two Strings (Not Case Sensitive)

If you do not care whether your strings are upper case or lower case then use this function instead of the strcmp function. Other than that, it's exactly the same.

```
int strcasecmp(string1, string2);
```

Imagine using this function in place of strcmp in the above example, all of the first and last combinations would output 0.

## Copy Strings

To copy one string to another string variable, you use the strcpy function. This makes up for not being able to use the "=" operator to set the value of a string variable.

```
1. strcpy(string1, string2);
```

To set the first name of our running example in code rather than terminal input we would use the following:

```
strcpy(fname, "purvi");
```

## Converting Uppercase Strings to Lowercase Strings

This function is not part of the ANSI standard and therefore strongly recommended against if you want your code to be portable to platforms other than Windows.

```
strlwr(string);
```

This will convert uppercase characters in string to lowercase. So "PURVI" would become "purvi".

## Reversing the Order of a String

This function is not part of the ANSI standard and therefore strongly recommended against if you want your code to be portable to platforms other than Windows.

# TOPS Technologies

---

```
strrev(string);
```

Will reverse the order of string. So if string was "bobby", it would become "ybbob".

## Converting Lowercase Strings to Uppercase Strings

This function is not part of the ANSI standard and therefore strongly recommended against if you want your code to be portable to platforms other than Windows.

```
strupr(string);
```

This will convert lowercase characters in string to uppercase. So "bobby" would become "BOBBY".

## **Function:**

Functions - C's Building Blocks or we can say subroutines or procedures or method. C program does not execute the functions directly. It is required to invoke or call that functions. When a function is called in a program then program control goes to the function body. Then, it executes the statements which are involved in a function body. Therefore, it is possible to call function whenever we want to process that functions statements.

## **Types of Function**

There are two types of function

1. Built-in function (Standard library functions)
2. Userdefine function.

### **Built In Functions:**

These functions are also called -library function|| .we need to include header file to use these functions.

For Example:

Printf();- this function is used to print any statement.

Scanf();- this function is used to read any value from the user.

Strcpy();- this function is used to copy one string to another string.

Strlen();- this function is used to find the length of the string.

### **UserDefineFunctions:**

This type of functions are created by programmers.

### **Types of User Define function**

1. With return type and with parameter
2. With return type and without parameter
3. Without return type and with parameter
4. Without return type and without parameter

### **Benefit of using function**

- C programming language supports function to provide modularity to the software.
- One of major advantage of function is it can be executed as many time as necessary from different points in your program so it helps you avoid duplication of work.
- By using function, you can divide complex tasks into smaller manageable tasks and test them independently before using them together.
- In software development, function allows sharing responsibility between team members in software development team. The whole team can define a set of standard function interface and implement it effectively.

### **Function body**

Function body is the place you write your own source code. All variables declare in function body and parameters in parameter list are local to function or in other word have function scope.

## Return statement

Return statement returns a value to where it was called. A copy of return value being return is made automatically. A function can have multiple return statements. If the void keyword used, the function don't need a return statement or using return; the syntax of return statement is return expression;

## Structure of function

### Function header

The general form of function header is:

```
return_type function_name(parameter_list)
```

Function header consists of three parts:

- Data type of return value of function; it can be any legal data type such as int, char, pointer... if the function does not return a value, the return type has to be specified by keyword void.
- Function name; function name is a sequence of letters and digits, the first of which is a letter, and where an underscore counts as a letter. The name of a function should be meaningful and express what it does, for example bubble\_sort,
- And a parameter list; parameter passed to function have to be separated by a semicolon, and each parameter has to indicate its data type and parameter name. Function does not require formal parameter so if you don't pass any parameter to function you can use keyword void.

Here are some examples of function header:

```
void sort(int a[], int size);
```

```
bool authenticate(char* username, char* password)
```

### How to use the function

Before using a function we should declare the function so the compiler has information of function to check and use it correctly. The function implementation has to match the function declaration for all parts: return data type, function name and parameter list. When you pass the parameter to function, they have to match data type, the order of parameters.

## 1. With return type and with parameter

**Example:**

```
#include <stdio.h>
int checkPrimeNumber(int n);

int main()
{
 int n, flag;

 printf("Enter a positive integer: ");
 scanf("%d",&n);

 // n is passed to the checkPrimeNumber()
 // function
 // the returned value is assigned to the
 // flag variable
 flag = checkPrimeNumber(n);

 if(flag == 1)
 printf("%d is not a prime number",n);
 else
 printf("%d is a prime number",n);

 return 0;
}

// int is returned from the function
int checkPrimeNumber(int n)
{
 int i;

 for(i=2; i <= n/2; ++i)
 {
 if(n%i == 0)
 return 1;
 }

 return 0;
}
```

## Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\checkprimewawr.exe
Enter a positive integer: 23
23 is a prime number

Process exited after 3.055 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```

The input from the user is passed to the `checkPrimeNumber()` function.

The `checkPrimeNumber()` function checks whether the passed argument is prime or not.

If the passed argument is a prime number, the function returns 0. If the passed argument is a non-prime number, the function returns 1. The return value is assigned to the `flag` variable.

Depending on whether `flag` is 0 or 1, an appropriate message is printed from the `main()` function.

## 2. With return type and without parameter

Example:

```
#include <stdio.h>
int getInteger();
int main()
{
 int n, i, flag = 0;
 // no argument is passed
 n = getInteger();
 for(i=2; i<=n/2; ++i)
 {
 if(n%i==0){
 flag = 1;
 break;
 }
 }
 if (flag == 1)
 printf("%d is not a prime number.", n);
 else
 printf("%d is a prime number.", n);

 return 0;
}
```

```
// returns integer entered by the user
int getInteger()
{
 int n;

 printf("Enter a positive integer: ");
 scanf("%d",&n);

 return n;
}
```

Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\withoutargwithret.exe
Enter a positive integer: 23
23 is a prime number.

Process exited after 1.756 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```

The empty parentheses in the `n = getInteger();` statement indicates that no argument is passed to the function. And, the value returned from the function is assigned to `n`.

Here, the `getInteger()` function takes input from the user and returns it. The code to check whether a number is prime or not is inside the `main()` function.

### 3. Without return type and with parameter

**Example:**

```
#include <stdio.h>
void checkPrimeAndDisplay(int n);

int main()
{
 int n;
```

```
printf("Enter a positive integer: ");
scanf("%d",&n);

// n is passed to the function
checkPrimeAndDisplay(n);

return 0;
}

// return type is void meaning doesn't return any value
void checkPrimeAndDisplay(int n)
{
 int i, flag = 0;

 for(i=2; i <= n/2; ++i)
 {
 if(n%i == 0){
 flag = 1;
 break;
 }
 }
 if(flag == 1)
 printf("%d is not a prime number.",n);
 else
 printf("%d is a prime number.", n);
}
```

## Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\noreturnwitharg.exe
Enter a positive integer: 23
23 is a prime number.

Process exited after 2.229 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```

The integer value entered by the user is passed to the `checkPrimeAndDisplay()` function.

Here, the `checkPrimeAndDisplay()` function checks whether the argument passed is a prime number or not and displays the appropriate message.

## 4. Without return type and without parameter

Example:

```
#include <stdio.h>
void checkPrimeNumber();
int main()
{
 checkPrimeNumber(); // argument is not passed
 return 0;
}
// return type is void meaning doesn't return any value
void checkPrimeNumber()
{
 int n, i, flag = 0;

 printf("Enter a positive integer: ");
 scanf("%d",&n);

 for(i=2; i <= n/2; ++i)
 {
 if(n%i == 0)
 {
 flag = 1;
 }
 }
 if (flag == 1)
 printf("%d is not a prime number.", n);
 else
 printf("%d is a prime number.", n);
}
```

Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\noretnoarg.exe
Enter a positive integer: 23
23 is a prime number.

Process exited after 1.37 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```

# TOPS Technologies

---

The `checkPrimeNumber()` function takes input from the user, checks whether it is a prime number or not and displays it on the screen.

The empty parentheses in `checkPrimeNumber();` statement inside the `main()` function indicates that no argument is passed to the function.

The return type of the function is `void`. Hence, no value is returned from the function.

## **Pass by value**

With this mechanism, all arguments you pass to function are copied into copy versions and your function work in that copy versions. So parameters does not affects after the function finished.

## **Pass by pointer**

In some programming contexts, you want to change arguments you pass to function. In this case, you can use pass by pointer mechanism. Remember that a pointer is a memory address of a variable. So when you pass a pointer to a function, the function makes a copy of it and changes the content of that memory address, after function finish the parameter is changed with the changes in function body.

## **Pass an array to function**

C allows you pass an array to a function, in this case the array is not copied. The name of array is a pointer which points to the first entry of it. And this pointer is passed to the function when you pass an array to a function.

## Source code example of various way to pass arguments to function

```
void swap(int *x, int *y);

/* demonstrate pass by value */
void swap(int x, int y);

/* demonstrate pass an array to the function */
void bubble_sort(int a[], int size);

void print_array(int a[],int size);

void main()
{
 int x = 10;
 int y = 20;
 printf("x,y before swapping\n");
 printf("x = %d\n",x);
 printf("y = %d\n",y);

 // pass by value
 swap(x,y);

 printf("x,y after swapping using pass by value\n");
 printf("x = %d\n",x);
 printf("y = %d\n",y);

 // pass by pointer
 swap(&x,&y);

 printf("x,y after swapping using pass by pointer\n");
 printf("x = %d\n",x);
 printf("y = %d\n",y);

 // declare an array
 const int size = 5;
 int a[size] = {1,3,2,5,4};

 printf("array before sorting\n");
 print_array(a,size);

 bubble_sort(a,size);
 printf("array after sorting\n");
 print_array(a,size);
}
```

```
/* functions implementation */

void swap(int *x, int *y){
 int temp = *x;
 *x = *y;
 *y = temp;
}

void swap(int x, int y){
 int temp = x;
 x = y;
 y = temp;
}

void bubble_sort(int a[], int size)
{
 int i,j;
 for(i=0;i<(size-1);i++)
 for(j=0;j<(size-(i+1));j++)
 if(a[j] > a[j+1])
 swap(&a[j],&a[j+1]);
}

void print_array(int a[],int size)
{

 for(int i = 0;i < size; i++)
 {
 printf("%d\t",a[i]);
 printf("\n");
 }
}
```

**Output:**

x,y before swapping

x = 10

y = 20

x,y after swapping using pass by value

x = 10

y = 20

x,y after swapping using pass by pointer

x = 20

y = 10

array before sorting

1

3  
2  
5  
4  
array after sorting

1  
2  
3  
4  
5

## Why Recursive Function

Recursive function allows you to divide your complex problem into identical single simple cases which can handle easily. This is also a well-known computer programming technique: divide and conquer.

## Note of Using Recursive Function

Recursive function must have at least one exit condition that can be satisfied. Otherwise, the recursive function will call itself repeatedly until the runtime stack overflows.

## Example of Using Recursive Function

Recursive function is closely related to definitions of functions in mathematics so we can solving factorial problems using recursive function.

All you know in mathematics the factorial of a positive integer N is defined as follows:

$N! = N*(N-1)*(N-2)...2*1;$

Or in a recursive way:

$N! = 1 \text{ if } N \leq 1 \text{ and } N*(N-1)! \text{ if } N > 1$

### Example:

```
include<stdio.h>

int factorial(unsigned int number)
{
if(number <= 1)
return 1;
return number * factorial(number - 1);
}
void main()
{
int x = 5;
printf("factorial of %d is
%d",x,factorial(x));
}
```

# TOPS Technologies

---

Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\recursivefun.exe
factorial of 5 is 120

Process exited after 0.2094 seconds with return value 21
Press any key to continue . . .
```

# TOPS Technologies

---

## Structures and unions:

In this tutorial you will learn about C Programming - Structures and Unions, initializing structure, assigning values to members, functions and structures, passing structure to functions, passing entire function to functions, arrays of structure, structure within a structure and union.

Structures are slightly different from the variable types you have been using till now. Structures are data types by themselves. When you define a structure or union, you are creating a custom data type.

## Structures

Structures in C are used to encapsulate, or group together different data into one object. You can define a Structure as shown below:

```
struct object {
 char id[20];
 int xpos;
 int ypos;
};
```

Structures can group data of different types as you can see in the example of a game object for a video game. The variables you declare inside the structure are called data members.

## Initializing a Structure

Structure members can be initialized when you declare a variable of your structure:  
struct object player1 = {-player1, 0, 0};

The above declaration will create a struct object called player1 with an id equal to -player1, xpos equal to 0, and ypos equal to 0.

To access the members of a structure, you use the `-.` (scope resolution) operator. Shown below is an example of how you can accomplish initialization by assigning values using the scope resolution operator:

```
struct object player1;
player1.id = -player1;
player1.xpos = 0;
player1.ypos = 0;
```

Example:

```
#include<stdio.h>
struct student
{
 char name[20];
 int id;
 float marks;
};
void main()
{
 struct student s1,s2,s3;
 int dummy;
```

```
printf("Enter the name, id, and marks of student 1 ");
scanf("%s %d %f",s1.name,&s1.id,&s1.marks);
scanf("%c",&dummy);
printf("Enter the name, id, and marks of student 2 ");
scanf("%s %d %f",s2.name,&s2.id,&s2.marks);
scanf("%c",&dummy);
printf("Enter the name, id, and marks of student 3 ");
scanf("%s %d %f",s3.name,&s3.id,&s3.marks);
scanf("%c",&dummy);
printf("Printing the details....\n");
printf("%s %d %f\n",s1.name,s1.id,s1.marks);
printf("%s %d %f\n",s2.name,s2.id,s2.marks);
printf("%s %d %f\n",s3.name,s3.id,s3.marks);
}
```

Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\studentstruct.exe
Enter the name, id, and marks of student 1 amar 11 50
Enter the name, id, and marks of student 2 arun 12 51
Enter the name, id, and marks of student 3 kavya 13 60
Printing the details....
amar 11 50.000000
arun 12 51.000000
kavya 13 60.000000

Process exited after 32.25 seconds with return value 19
Press any key to continue . . . ■
```

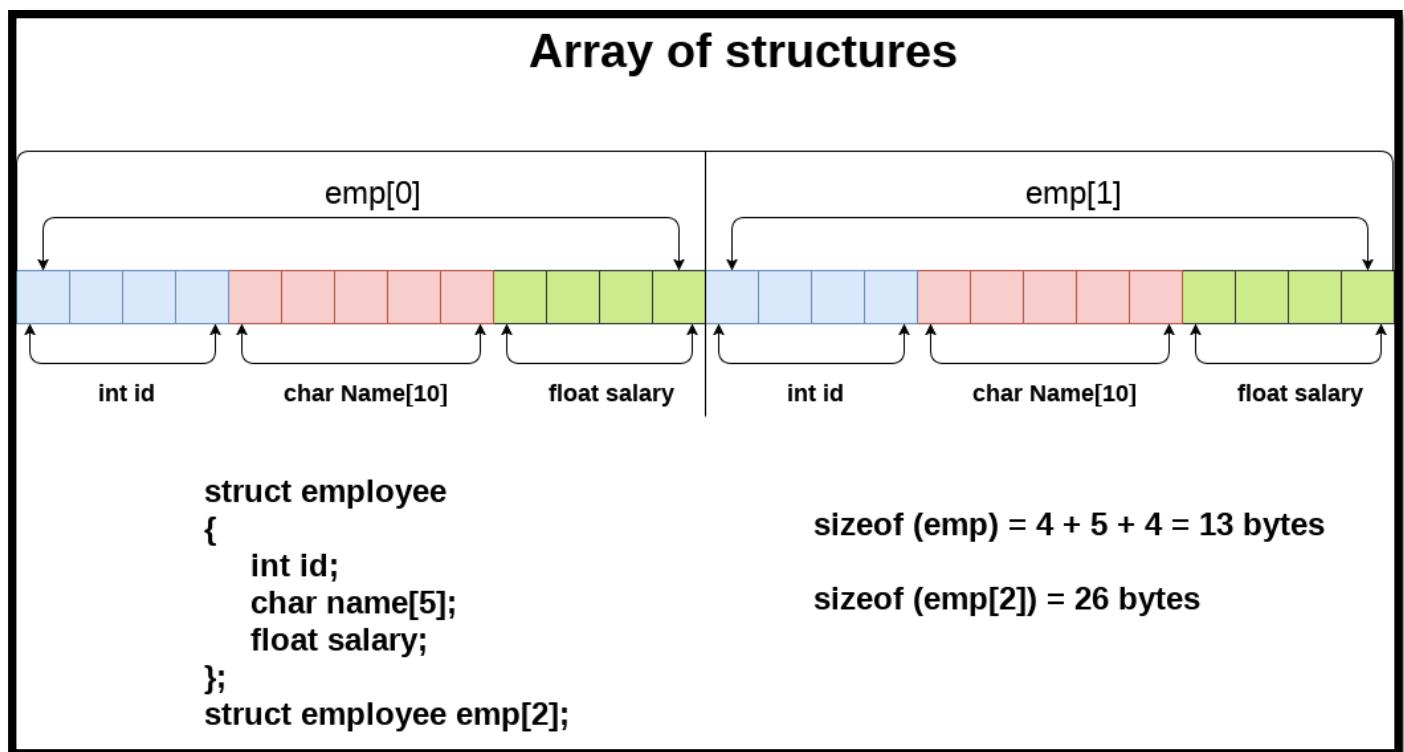
In the above program, we have stored data of 3 students in the structure. However, the complexity of the program will be increased if there are 20 students. In that case, we will have to declare 20 different structure variables and store them one by one. This will always be tough since we will have to declare a variable every time we add a student. Remembering the name of all the variables is also a very tricky task. However, C enables us to declare an array of structures by using which, we can avoid declaring the different structure variables; instead we can make a collection containing all the structures that store the information of different entities.

# TOPS Technologies

## Arrays of Structure

Since structures are data types that are especially useful for creating collection items, why not make a collection of them using an array? Let us now modify our above example object1.c to use an array of structures rather than individual ones.

An array of structures in C can be defined as the collection of multiple structures variables where each variable contains information about different entities. The array of structures in C are used to store information about multiple entities of different data types. The array of structures is also known as the collection of structures.



Example:

```
#include<stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
struct student{
int rollno;
char name[10];
};
int main(){
int i;
struct student st[5];
printf("Enter Records of 5 students");
for(i=0;i<5;i++){
printf("\nEnter Rollno:");
scanf("%d",&st[i].rollno);
printf("\nEnter Name:");


```

```
scanf("%s",&st[i].name);
}
printf("\nStudent Information List:");
for(i=0;i<5;i++){
printf("\nRollno:%d,
Name:%s",st[i].rollno,st[i].name);
}
return 0;
}
```

Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\arrstr.exe
Enter Records of 5 students
Enter Rollno:1
Enter Name:ajay
Enter Rollno:2
Enter Name:trisha
Enter Rollno:3
Enter Name:karan
Enter Rollno:4
Enter Name:tushar
Enter Rollno:5
Enter Name:kavita
Student Information List:
Rollno:1, Name:ajay
Rollno:2, Name:trisha
Rollno:3, Name:karan
Rollno:4, Name:tushar
Rollno:5, Name:kavita

Process exited after 32.14 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```

We create an array of structures called `gamobj` and use the `createobj` function to initialize its elements. You can observe that there is not much difference between the two programs. We added an update for the `enemy1`'s position to show how to access a structure's members when it is an element within an array.

### Structure within a Structure

Structures may even have structures as members. Imagine our x, y coordinate pair is a structure called `coordinates`. We can redeclare our object structure as follows:

```
struct object
{
 char id[20];
 struct coordinates loc;
```

# TOPS Technologies

---

```
};
```

You can still initialize these by using nested braces, like so:

```
struct object player1 = {—player1[], {0, 0}};
```

To access or set members of the above internal structure you would do like this:

```
{geshibot language="c"} struct object player1;
 player1.id = -player1[];
 player1.loc.xpos = 0;
 player1.loc.ypos = 0;
```

You simply add one more level of scope resolution.

## Unions

Unions and Structures are identical in all ways, except for one very important aspect. Only one element in the union may have a value set at any given time. Everything we have shown you for structures will work for unions, except for setting more than one of its members at a time. Unions are mainly used to conserve memory. While each member within a structure is assigned its own unique storage area, the members that compose a union share the common storage area within the memory. Unions are useful for application involving multiple members where values are not assigned to all the members at any one time.

```
union deadoralive
{
 int alive;
 int dead;
}
```

## DIFFERENCE BETWEEN STRUCTURE AND UNION

All the members of the structure can be accessed at once, where as in an union only one member can be used at a time. Another important difference is in the size allocated to a structure and an union.

for eg:

```
struct example
```

```
{
 int integer;
 float floating_numbers;
};
```

The size allocated here is sizeof(int)+sizeof(float); where as in an union union example { int integer; float floating\_numbers; } size allocated is the size of the highest member. so size is(sizeof(float));

The compiler allocates a piece of storage that is large enough to access a union member we can use the same syntax that we use to access structure members. That is

code.m

code.p

code.c

Are all valid member variables. During accessing we should make sure that we are accessing the member whose value is currently stored.

For example a statement such as

```
code.m=456;
code.p=456.78;
printf(%d,code.m);
```

Would produce erroneous result.

In effect a union creates a storage location that can be used by one of its members at a time. When a different number is assigned a new value the new value supercedes the previous members value. Unions may be used in all places where a structure is allowed. The notation for accessing a union member that is nested inside a structure remains the same as for the nested structure.

## Functions and Structures

Since structures are of custom data types, functions can return structures and also take them as arguments. Keep in mind that when you do this, you are making a copy of the structure and all its members so it can be quite memory intensive.

To return a structure from a function declare the function to be of the structure type you want to return. In our case a function to initialize our object structure might look like this:

```
struct object createobj(char id[], int xpos, int ypos) {
 struct object newobj;
 strcpy(newobj.id, name);
 newobj.xpos = xpos;
 newobj.ypos = ypos;

 return newobj;
}
```

## Pass Structure to a Function

Let us now learn to pass a structure to a function. As an example let us use a function that prints members of the structure passed to it:

```
void printobj(struct object obj) {
 printf(-name: %s, , obj.id);
 printf(-x position: %d, , obj.xpos);
 printf(-y position: %d, , obj.ypos);
 printf(-n);
}
```

For completeness we shall include the full source of the above examples so you may see how it all fits together.

# TOPS Technologies

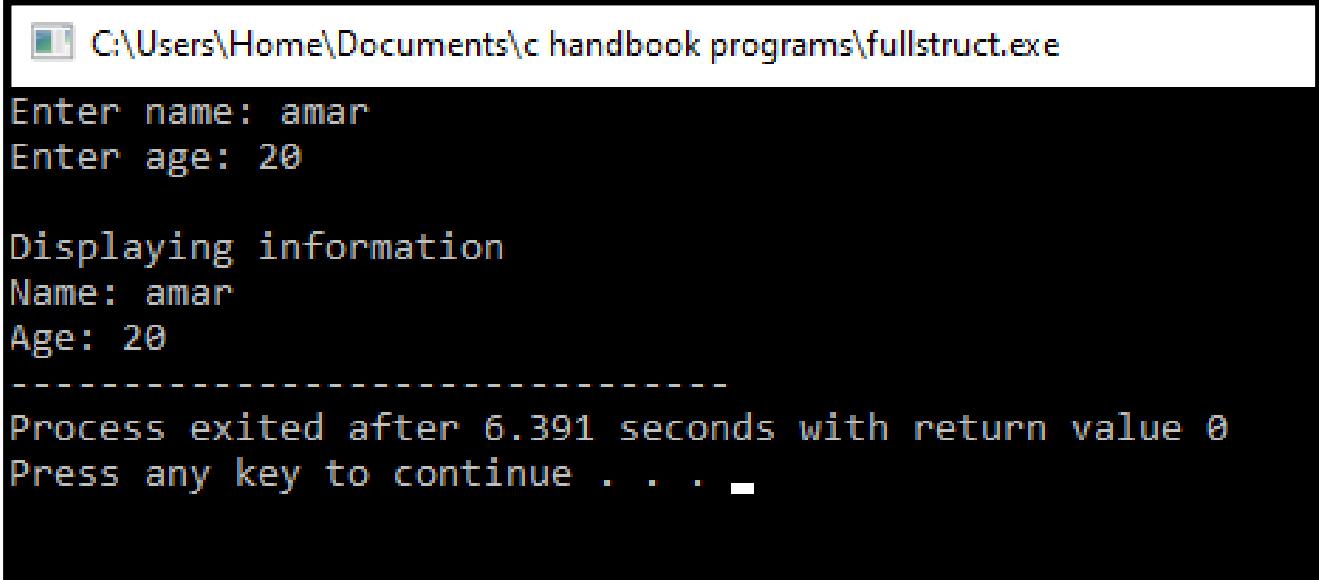
---

Example:

```
#include <stdio.h>
struct student {
 char name[50];
 int age;
};
// function prototype
void display(struct student s);
int main() {
 struct student s1;
 printf("Enter name: ");
 // read string input from the user until \n is entered
 // \n is discarded
 scanf("%[^\\n]*c", s1.name);
 printf("Enter age: ");
 scanf("%d", &s1.age);
 display(s1); // passing struct as an argument
 return 0;
}

void display(struct student s) {
 printf("\nDisplaying information\n");
 printf("Name: %s", s.name);
 printf("\nAge: %d", s.age);
}
```

Output:



A terminal window showing the execution of a C program named fullstruct.exe. The program prompts the user for a name and age, then displays the information back to the user.

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\fullstruct.exe
Enter name: amar
Enter age: 20

Displaying information
Name: amar
Age: 20

Process exited after 6.391 seconds with return value 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```

## Pointer

Pointers are used everywhere in C, so if you want to use the C language fully you have to have a very good understanding of pointers. They have to become *comfortable* for you. The goal of this section and the next several that follow is to help you build a complete understanding of pointers and how C uses them. For most people it takes a little time and some practice to become fully comfortable with pointers, but once you master them you are a full-fledged C programmer. C uses pointers in three different ways:

- C uses pointers to create **dynamic data structures** -- data structures built up from blocks of memory allocated from the heap at run-time.
- C uses pointers to handle **variable parameters** passed to functions.
- Pointers in C provide an alternative way to **access information stored in arrays**. Pointer techniques are especially valuable when you work with strings. There is an intimate link between arrays and pointers in C.

In some cases, C programmers also use pointers because they make the code slightly more efficient. What you will find is that, once you are completely comfortable with pointers, you tend to use them all the time.

We will start this discussion with a basic introduction to pointers and the concepts surrounding pointers, and then move on to the three techniques described above. Especially on this article, you will want to read things twice. The first time through you can learn all the concepts. The second time through you can work on binding the concepts together into an integrated whole in your mind. After you make your way through the material the second time, it will make a lot of sense.

C pointer is a memory address. When you define a variable for example:

```
int x = 10;
```

You specify variable name (x), its data type (integer in this example) and its value is 10. The variable x resides in memory with a specified memory address. To get the memory address of variable x, you use operator & before it. This code snippet print memory address of x

```
printf("memory address of x is %d\n",&x);
```

and in my PC the output is memory address of x is 1310588

Now you want to access memory address of variable x you have to use pointer. After that you can access and modify the content of memory address which pointer point to. In this case the memory address of x is 1310588 and its content is 10. To declare pointer you use asterisk notation (\*) after pointer's data type and before pointer name as follows:

```
int *px;
```

Now if you want pointer px to points to memory address of variable x, you can use address-of operator (&) as follows:

```
int *px = &x;
```

After that you can change the content of variable x for example you can increase, decrease x value :

```
*px += 10;
```

```
printf("value of x is
%d\n",x);
```

```
*px -= 5;
```

```
printf("value of x is
%d\n",x);
```

and the output indicates that x variable has been change via pointer px.

# TOPS Technologies

---

value of x is 20  
value of x is 15

It is noted that the operator (\*) is used to dereference and return content of memory address. In some programming contexts, you need a pointer which you can only change memory address of it but value or change the value of it but memory address. In this cases, you can use *const* keyword to define a pointer points to a constant integer or a constant pointer points to an integer as follows:

Example:

```
#include<stdio.h>
void main(){
 int c = 10; int c2 = 20;
 /* define a pointer and points to an constant integer.
 pc can point to another integer but you cannot change the content of it */

 const int *pc = &c;

/* pc++; */ /* cause error */ printf("value of pc is %d\n",pc); pc = &c2;
printf("value of pc is %d\n",pc);

/* define a constant pointer and points to an integer.
py only can point to y and its memory address cannot be changed you can change its content */

int y = 10; int y2 = 20;

int const *py = &y;

py++;/ it is ok */ printf("value of y is %d\n",y);
/* py = &y2; */ /* cause error */
}
```

Output:

```
C:\Users\Home\Documents\c handbook programs\pointer.exe
value of pc is 6487556
value of pc is 6487556
value of y is 10

Process exited after 0.09216 seconds with return value 17
Press any key to continue . . .
```

## Dynamic Memory Allocation

malloc, calloc, or realloc are the three functions used to manipulate memory. These commonly used functions are available through the stdlib library so you must include this library in order to use them.

```
#include <stdlib.h>
```

After including the stdlib library you can use the malloc, calloc, or realloc functions to manipulate chunks of memory for your variables.

## Dynamic Memory Allocation Process

When a program executes, the operating system gives it a stack and a heap to work with. The stack is where global variables, static variables, and functions and their locally defined variables reside. The heap is a free section for the program to use for allocating memory at runtime.

## Allocating a Block of Memory

Use the malloc function to allocate a block of memory for a variable. If there is not enough memory available, malloc will return NULL.

The prototype for malloc is:

```
void *malloc(size_t size);
```

Do not worry about the size of your variable, there is a nice and convenient function that will find it for you, called sizeof. Most calls to malloc will look like the following example:

```
ptr = (struct mystruct*)malloc(sizeof(struct mystruct));
```

This way you can get memory for your structure variable without having to know exactly how much to allocate for all its members as well.

## Allocating Multiple Blocks of Memory

You can also ask for multiple blocks of memory with the calloc function:

```
void *calloc(size_t num, size_t size);
```

If you want to allocate a block for a 10 char array, you can do this:

```
char *ptr;
ptr = (char *)calloc(10, sizeof(char));
```

The above code will give you a chunk of memory the size of 10 chars, and the ptr variable would be pointing to the beginning of the memory chunk. If the call fails, ptr would be NULL.

## Releasing the Used Space

All calls to the memory allocating functions discussed here, need to have the memory explicitly freed when no longer in use to prevent memory leaks. Just remember that for every call to an \*alloc function you must have a corresponding call to free.

The function call to explicitly free the memory is very simple and is written as shown here below:

```
free(ptr);
```

Just pass this function the pointer to the variable you want to free and you are done.

## To Alter the Size of Allocated Memory

Lets get to that third memory allocation function, realloc.

```
void *realloc(void *ptr, size_t size);
```

Pass this function the pointer to the memory you want to resize and the new size you want to

# TOPS Technologies

---

resize the allocated memory for the variable you want to resize.

Here is a simple and trivial example to give you a quick idea of how you might see calloc and realloc in action. You will have many chances for malloc viewing as it is the most popular of the three by far.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
void main() {
 char *ptr, *retval;
 ptr = (char *)calloc(10, sizeof(char));
 if (ptr == NULL)
 printf("calloc failed\n");
 else
 printf("calloc successful\n");
```

```
 retval = realloc(ptr, 5);
 if (retval == NULL)
 printf("realloc failed\n");
 else
 printf("realloc successful\n");
 free(ptr);
 free(retval);
}
```

First we declared two pointers and allocated a block of memory the size of 10 chars for ptr using the calloc function. The second pointer retval is used for getting the return value from the call to realloc. Then we reallocate the size of ptr to 5 chars instead of 10. After we check whether all went well with that call, we free up both pointers.

You can play around with the values of size passed to either of the memory allocation functions to see how big a chunk you can ask for before it fails on you. Do not worry, your operating system has the ability to keep your program in check, you will not hurt it this way.

## Output:

```
calloc successful
realloc successful
```

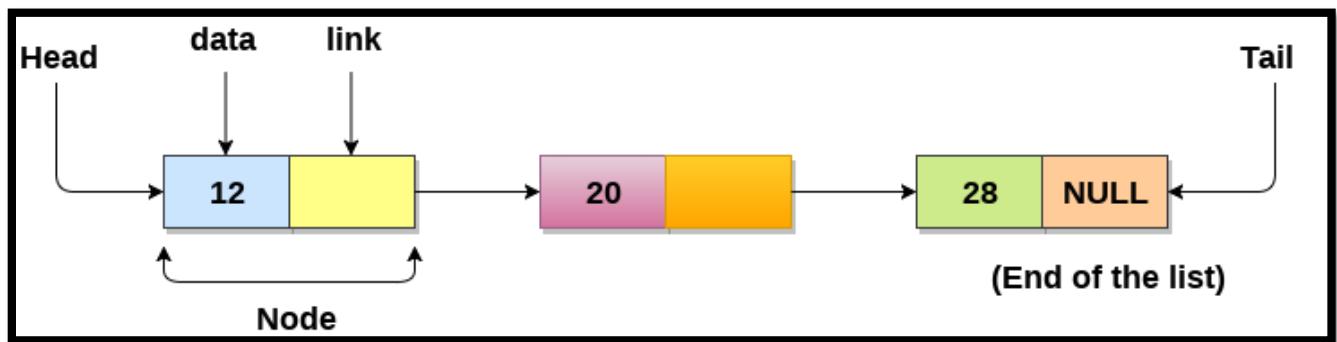
# TOPS Technologies

## Linked List:

Linked lists are a type of data structure for storing information as a list. They are a memory efficient alternative to arrays because the size of the list is only ever as large as the data. Plus they do not have to shift data and recopy when resizing as dynamic arrays do.

They do have the extra overhead of 1 or 2 pointers per data node, so they make sense only with larger records. You would not want to store a list of integers in a linked list because it would actually double your memory overhead over the same list in an array.

There are three different types of linked lists, but the other two are just variations of the basic singly linked list. If you understand this linked list then you will be able to handle other two types of lists.



## Advantages of Linked Lists

A linked list is a dynamic data structure and therefore the size of the linked list can grow or shrink in size during execution of the program. A linked list does not require any extra space therefore it does not waste extra memory. It provides flexibility in rearranging the items efficiently.

The limitation of linked list is that it consumes extra space when compared to a array since each node must also contain the address of the next item in the list to search for a single item in a linked list is cumbersome and time consuming process.

## Uses of Linked List

- The list is not required to be contiguously present in the memory. The node can reside anywhere in the memory and linked together to make a list. This achieves optimized utilization of space.
- list size is limited to the memory size and doesn't need to be declared in advance.
- Empty node can not be present in the linked list.
- We can store values of primitive types or objects in the singly linked list.

## Why use linked list over array?

Till now, we were using array data structure to organize the group of elements that are to be stored individually in the memory. However, Array has several advantages and disadvantages which must be known in order to decide the data structure which will be used throughout the program.

Array contains following limitations:

1. The size of array must be known in advance before using it in the program.

# TOPS Technologies

---

2. Increasing size of the array is a time taking process. It is almost impossible to expand the size of the array at run time.
3. All the elements in the array need to be contiguously stored in the memory. Inserting any element in the array needs shifting of all its predecessors.

Linked list is the data structure which can overcome all the limitations of an array. Using linked list is useful because,

1. It allocates the memory dynamically. All the nodes of linked list are non-contiguously stored in the memory and linked together with the help of pointers.
2. Sizing is no longer a problem since we do not need to define its size at the time of declaration. List grows as per the program's demand and limited to the available memory space.

## Linked lists Types

There are 4 different kinds of linked lists:

1. Linear singly linked list
2. Circular singly linked list
3. Two way or doubly linked list
4. Circular doubly linked list.

## Linked List Nodes

A linked list gets their name from the fact that each list node is -linked by a pointer. A linked list node is comparable to an array element. A node contains a data portion and a pointer portion, and is declared as structs in C.

As an example, we can implement a list of high scores for a game as a linked list.

Let us now declare a node:

We have two variables that make up the data portion of the node, and then the pointer to the next node in the list.

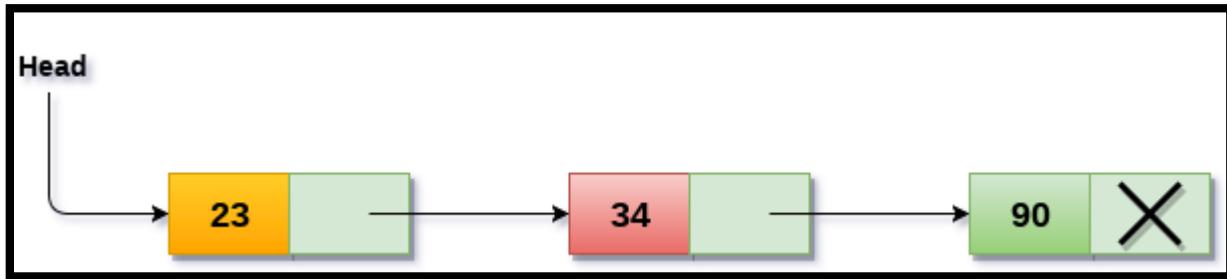
## Singly linked list or One way chain

Singly linked list can be defined as the collection of ordered set of elements. The number of elements may vary according to need of the program. A node in the singly linked list consist of two parts: data part and link part. Data part of the node stores actual information that is to be represented by the node while the link part of the node stores the address of its immediate successor.

One way chain or singly linked list can be traversed only in one direction. In other words, we can say that each node contains only next pointer, therefore we can not traverse the list in the reverse direction.

Consider an example where the marks obtained by the student in three subjects are stored in a linked list as shown in the figure.

# TOPS Technologies



In the above figure, the arrow represents the links. The data part of every node contains the marks obtained by the student in the different subject. The last node in the list is identified by the null pointer which is present in the address part of the last node. We can have as many elements we require, in the data part of the list.

## Complexity

Data Structure	Time Complexity								Space Complexity
	Average				Worst				
	Access	Search	Insertion	Deletion	Access	Search	Insertion	Deletion	
Singly Linked List	$\Theta(n)$	$\Theta(n)$	$\Theta(1)$	$\Theta(1)$	$O(n)$	$O(n)$	$O(1)$	$O(1)$	$O(n)$

## Creating Linked Lists

A linked list always has a base node that is most commonly called a head, but some call it as a root. An empty linked list will have this node and will be set to NULL. This goes for all three types of linked lists. The last node in a linked list always points to NULL.

Let us declare our linked list for implementing high scores list.

```
struct llnode *head = NULL;
```

Here we just declared a regular pointer variable of the node struct we declared, and then set the head to NULL to indicate the list is empty.

## Traversing a Linked List

Moving through a linked list and visiting all the nodes is called traversing the linked list. There is more than one way to encounter segmentation faults when traversing a linked list, but if you are careful and follow 2 basic checks you will be able to handle segmentation faults.

To traverse a singly linked list you create a pointer and set it to head. Often called the current node as a reminder that it is keeping track of the current node. Always make sure to check that

# TOPS Technologies

---

head is not NULL before trying to traverse the list or you will get a segmentation fault. You may also need to check that the next pointer of the current node is not NULL, if not, you will go past the end of the list and create a segmentation fault.

Here is a failsafe way of traversing a singly linked list:

```
if (head != NULL) {
 while (currentnode->next != NULL) {
 currentnode = currentnode->next;
 }
}
```

We first check that the head is not NULL and if so, as long as the current pointer's next is not NULL, we set current equal to the next node effectively moving through the entire list until we do encounter a next pointer that is NULL. If you follow that formula, you will have no problems with segmentation faults during traversal.

## Live Demo

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdbool.h>

struct node {
 int data;
 int key;
 struct node *next;
};

struct node *head = NULL;
struct node *current = NULL;

//display the list
void printList() {
 struct node *ptr = head;
 printf("\n[");

 //start from the beginning
 while(ptr != NULL) {
 printf("(%d,%d) ",ptr->key,ptr->data);
 ptr = ptr->next;
 }

 printf("]");
}

//insert link at the first location
void insertFirst(int key, int data) {
 //create a link
 struct node *link = (struct node*) malloc(sizeof(struct node));
 link->key = key;
 link->data = data;
 link->next = head;
 head = link;
}
```

```
link->key = key;
link->data = data;

//point it to old first node
link->next = head;

//point first to new first node
head = link;
}

//delete first item
struct node* deleteFirst() {

 //save reference to first link
 struct node *tempLink = head;

 //mark next to first link as first
 head = head->next;

 //return the deleted link
 return tempLink;
}

//is list empty
bool isEmpty() {
 return head == NULL;
}

int length() {
 int length = 0;
 struct node *current;

 for(current = head; current != NULL; current = current->next) {
 length++;
 }

 return length;
}

//find a link with given key
struct node* find(int key) {

 //start from the first link
 struct node* current = head;

 //if list is empty
}
```

```
if(head == NULL) {
 return NULL;
}

//navigate through list
while(current->key != key) {

 //if it is last node
 if(current->next == NULL) {
 return NULL;
 } else {
 //go to next link
 current = current->next;
 }
}

//if data found, return the current Link
return current;
}

//delete a link with given key
struct node* delete(int key) {

 //start from the first link
 struct node* current = head;
 struct node* previous = NULL;

 //if list is empty
 if(head == NULL) {
 return NULL;
 }

 //navigate through list
 while(current->key != key) {

 //if it is last node
 if(current->next == NULL) {
 return NULL;
 } else {
 //store reference to current link
 previous = current;
 //move to next link
 current = current->next;
 }
 }

 //found a match, update the link
}
```

```
if(current == head) {
 //change first to point to next link
 head = head->next;
} else {
 //bypass the current link
 previous->next = current->next;
}

return current;
}
```

```
void sort() {

 int i, j, k, tempKey, tempData;
 struct node *current;
 struct node *next;

 int size = length();
 k = size ;

 for (i = 0 ; i < size - 1 ; i++, k--) {
 current = head;
 next = head->next;

 for (j = 1 ; j < k ; j++) {

 if (current->data > next->data) {
 tempData = current->data;
 current->data = next->data;
 next->data = tempData;

 tempKey = current->key;
 current->key = next->key;
 next->key = tempKey;
 }

 current = current->next;
 next = next->next;
 }
 }

 void reverse(struct node** head_ref) {
 struct node* prev = NULL;
 struct node* current = *head_ref;
 struct node* next;
```

```
while (current != NULL) {
 next = current->next;
 current->next = prev;
 prev = current;
 current = next;
}

*head_ref = prev;
}

void main() {
 insertFirst(1,10);
 insertFirst(2,20);
 insertFirst(3,30);
 insertFirst(4,1);
 insertFirst(5,40);
 insertFirst(6,56);

 printf("Original List: ");

 //print list
 printList();

 while(!isEmpty()) {
 struct node *temp = deleteFirst();
 printf("\nDeleted value:");
 printf("(%d,%d) ",temp->key,temp->data);
 }

 printf("\nList after deleting all items: ");
 printList();
 insertFirst(1,10);
 insertFirst(2,20);
 insertFirst(3,30);
 insertFirst(4,1);
 insertFirst(5,40);
 insertFirst(6,56);

 printf("\nRestored List: ");
 printList();
 printf("\n");

 struct node *foundLink = find(4);

 if(foundLink != NULL) {
 printf("Element found: ");
 printf("(%d,%d) ",foundLink->key,foundLink->data);
 }
}
```

```
printf("\n");
} else {
 printf("Element not found.");
}

delete(4);
printf("List after deleting an item: ");
printList();
printf("\n");
foundLink = find(4);

if(foundLink != NULL) {
 printf("Element found: ");
 printf("(%d,%d) ",foundLink->key,foundLink->data);
 printf("\n");
} else {
 printf("Element not found.");
}

printf("\n");
sort();

printf("List after sorting the data: ");
printList();

reverse(&head);
printf("\nList after reversing the data: ");
printList();
}
```

## Output

```
Original List:
[(6,56) (5,40) (4,1) (3,30) (2,20) (1,10)]
Deleted value:(6,56)
Deleted value:(5,40)
Deleted value:(4,1)
Deleted value:(3,30)
Deleted value:(2,20)
Deleted value:(1,10)
List after deleting all items:
[]
Restored List:
[(6,56) (5,40) (4,1) (3,30) (2,20) (1,10)]
Element found: (4,1)
List after deleting an item:
[(6,56) (5,40) (3,30) (2,20) (1,10)]
Element not found.
List after sorting the data:
[(1,10) (2,20) (3,30) (5,40) (6,56)]
List after reversing the data:
[(6,56) (5,40) (3,30) (2,20) (1,10)]
```

## File Management In C

In this tutorial you will learn about C Programming - File management in C, File operation functions in C, Defining and opening a file, Closing a file, The getw and putw functions, The fprintf & fscanf functions, Random access to files and fseek function.

C supports a number of functions that have the ability to perform basic file operations, which include:

1. Naming a file
2. Opening a file
3. Reading from a file
4. Writing data into a file
5. Closing a file

- Real life situations involve large volume of data and in such cases, the console oriented I/O operations pose two major problems
- It becomes cumbersome and time consuming to handle large volumes of data through terminals.
- The entire data is lost when either the program is terminated or computer is turned off therefore it is necessary to have more flexible approach where data can be stored on the disks and read whenever necessary, without destroying the data. This method employs the concept of files to store data.

### File Operation function in C:

Function Name	Operation
fopen()	Creates a new file for use Opens a new existing file for use

fclose	Closes a file which has been opened for use
getc()	Reads a character from a file
putc()	Writes a character to a file
fprintf()	Writes a set of data values to a file
fscanf()	Reads a set of data values from a file
getw()	Reads a integer from a file
putw()	Writes an integer to the file
fseek()	Sets the position to a desired point in the file
ftell()	Gives the current position in the file
rewind()	Sets the position to the begining of the file

### **Defining and opening a file:**

If we want to store data in a file into the secondary memory, we must specify certain things about the file to the operating system. They include the filename, data structure, purpose.

The general format of the function used for opening a file is

```
FILE *fp;
fp=fopen(-filename||,||mode||);
```

The first statement declares the variable fp as a pointer to the data type FILE. As stated earlier, File is a structure that is defined in the I/O Library. The second statement opens the file named filename and assigns an identifier to the FILE type pointer fp. This pointer, which contains all the information about the file, is subsequently used as a communication link between the system and the program.

The second statement also specifies the purpose of opening the file. The mode does this job.

R open the file for read only.

W open the file for writing only.

A open the file for appending data to it.

Consider the following statements:

```
FILE *p1,*p2;
p1=fopen(-data||,||r||);
p2=fopen(-results||,||w||);
```

In these statements the p1 and p2 are created and assigned to open the files data and results respectively the file data is opened for reading and result is opened for writing. In case the results file already exists, its contents are deleted and the files are opened as a new file. If data file does not exist error will occur.

### **Closing a file:**

The input output library supports the function to close a file; it is in the following format.

```
fclose(file_pointer);
```

A file must be closed as soon as all operations on it have been completed. This would close the file associated with the file pointer.

Observe the following program.

....

```
FILE *p1 *p2;
```

# TOPS Technologies

---

```
p1=fopen (-Input\,\,,"w\");
p2=fopen (-Output\,\,,"r\");
.....
...
fclose(p1);
fclose(p2)
```

The above program opens two files and closes them after all operations on them are completed, once a file is closed its file pointer can be reversed on other file.

The getc and putc functions are analogous to getchar and putchar functions and handle one character at a time. The putc function writes the character contained in character variable c to the file associated with the pointer fp1. ex putc(c,fp1); similarly getc function is used to read a character from a file that has been open in read mode. c=getc(fp2).

The program shown below displays use of a file operations. The data enter through the keyboard and the program writes it. Character by character, to the file input. The end of the data is indicated by entering an EOF character, which is control-z. the file input is closed at this signal.

```
#include<stdio.h>
void main()
{
FILE *f1;
char c;
clrscr();
printf("Data input output");
f1=fopen("Input","w"); /*Open the file Input*/
while((c=getchar())!='0') /*get a character from key board*/
{
 putc(c,f1); /*write a character to input*/
fclose(f1); /*close the file input*/
printf("\nData output\n");
f1=fopen("INPUT","r"); /*Reopen the file input*/
while((c=getc(f1))!=EOF)
{
 printf("%c",c);

}
fclose(f1);
}
```

## The getw and putw functions:

These are integer-oriented functions. They are similar to get c and putc functions and are used to read and write integer values. These functions would be useful when we deal with only integer data. The general forms of getw and putw are:

putw(integer,fp);

getw(fp);

```
/*Example program for using getw and putw functions*/
#include<stdio.h>
void main()
{
 FILE *f1,*f2,*f3;
 int number,i;
 printf("\n MYDATA file contents:");
 f1=fopen("MYDATA","w");
 for(i=1;i<30;i++)
 {
 scanf("%d",&number);
 if(number== -1)
 break;
 putw(number,f1);
 }
 fclose(f1);
 f1=fopen("MYDATA","r");
 f2=fopen("ODD","w");
 f3=fopen("EVEN","w");
 while((number=getw(f1))!=EOF)
 {
 if(number%2==0)
 putw(number,f3);
 else
 putw(number,f2);
 }
 fclose(f1);
 fclose(f2);
 fclose(f3);
 f2=fopen("ODD","r");
 f3=fopen("EVEN","r");
 printf("\n contents of ODD file: ");
 while((number=getw(f2))!=EOF)
 printf("%d ",number);
 printf("\n Contents of File EVEN: ");
 while((number=getw(f3))!=EOF)
```

```
printf("%d ",number);
fclose(f2);
fclose(f3);
getch();
}
```

## The fprintf & fscanf functions:

The fprintf and fscanf functions are identical to printf and scanf functions except that they work on files. The first argument of these functions is a file pointer which specifies the file to be used.

The general form of fprintf is

```
fprintf(fp,||control string||, list);
```

Where fp is a file pointer associated with a file that has been opened for writing. The control string is file output specifications list may include variable, constant and string.

```
fprintf(f1,%s%d%fl,name,age,7.5);
```

Here name is an array variable of type char and age is an int variable

The general format of fscanf is

```
fscanf(fp,||controlstring||,list);
```

This statement would cause the reading of items in the control string.

## Example:

```
fscanf(f2,||5s%d||,item,&quantity);
```

Like scanf, fscanf also returns the number of items that are successfully read.

```
/*Program to handle mixed data types*/
#include<stdio.h>
void main()
{
FILE *ptr;
int i,number;
float balance;
char ch,name[30],filename[10];
clrscr();
printf("Enter the file name:-");
gets(filename);
ptr=fopen(filename,"w");
printf("\nEnter data\n");
printf(" A/c No. Name Balance\n");
for(i=0;i<3;i++)
{
fscanf(stdin,"%d %s %f",&number,name,&balance);
fprintf(ptr,"%4d%10s%6.2f",number,name,balance);
}
fclose(ptr);
ptr=fopen(filename,"r");
puts(" Number Name Balance");
while(!feof(ptr))
```

```
{
 fscanf(ptr,"%d %s %f",&number,name,&balance);
 printf("%4d%10s%6.2f\n",number,name,balance);
}
fclose(ptr);
getch();
}
```

### Random access to files:

Sometimes it is required to access only a particular part of the file and not the complete file. This can be accomplished by using the following function:

1 > fseek

### fseek function:

The general format of fseek function is as follows:

```
fseek(file pointer,offset, position);
```

This function is used to move the file position to a desired location within the file. Fileptr is a pointer to the file concerned. Offset is a number or variable of type long, and position in an integer number. Offset specifies the number of positions (bytes) to be moved from the location specified by the position. The position can take the 3 values.

Value Meaning

0 Beginning of the file

1 Current position

2 End of the file.

## C Language - The Preprocessor

In this tutorial you will learn about C Language - The Preprocessor, Preprocessor directives, Macros, #define identifier string, Simple macro substitution, Macros as arguments, Nesting of macros, Undefining a macro and File inclusion.

### The Preprocessor

A unique feature of c language is the preprocessor. A program can use the tools provided by preprocessor to make his program easy to read, modify, portable and more efficient.

Preprocessor is a program that processes the code before it passes through the compiler. It operates under the control of preprocessor command lines and directives. Preprocessor directives are placed in the source program before the main line before the source code passes through the compiler it is examined by the preprocessor for any preprocessor directives. If there is any appropriate actions are taken then the source program is handed over to the compiler.

Preprocessor directives follow the special syntax rules and begin with the symbol # in column1 and do not require any semicolon at the end. A set of commonly used preprocessor directives

### Preprocessor directives:

Directive	Function
#define	Defines a macro substitution
#undef	Undefines a macro
#include	Specifies a file to be included
#ifdef	Tests for macro definition
#endif	Specifies the end of #if
#ifndef	Tests whether the macro is not defined
#if	Tests a compile time condition
#else	Specifies alternatives when #if test fails

The preprocessor directives can be divided into three categories

1. Macro substitution division
2. File inclusion division
3. Compiler control division

## **Macros:**

Macro substitution is a process where an identifier in a program is replaced by a pre defined string composed of one or more tokens we can use the #define statement for the task.

It has the following form

**#define identifier string**

The preprocessor replaces every occurrence of the identifier int the source code by a string. The definition should start with the keyword #define and should follow on identifier and a string with at least one blank space between them. The string may be any text and identifier must be a valid c name.

There are different forms of macro substitution. The most common form is

1. Simple macro substitution
2. Argument macro substitution
3. Nested macro substitution

### **Simple macro substitution:**

Simple string replacement is commonly used to define constants example:

#define pi 3.1415926

Writing macro definition in capitals is a convention not a rule a macro definition can include more than a simple constant value it can include expressions as well. Following are valid examples:

#define AREA 12.36

### **Macros as arguments:**

The preprocessor permits us to define more complex and more useful form of replacements it takes the following form.

# define identifier(f1,f2,f3.....fn) string.

Notice that there is no space between identifier and left parentheses and the identifier f1,f2,f3 .... Fn is analogous to formal arguments in a function definition.

There is a basic difference between simple replacement discussed above and replacement of macro arguments is known as a macro call

A simple example of a macro with arguments is

# define CUBE (x) (x\*x\*x)

If the following statements appears later in the program,

volume=CUBE(side);

The preprocessor would expand the statement to

volume =(side\*side\*side)

### **Nesting of macros:**

We can also use one macro in the definition of another macro. That is macro definitions may be nested. Consider the following macro definitions

# define SQUARE(x)((x)\*(x))

### **Undefining a macro:**

A defined macro can be undefined using the statement

# TOPS Technologies

---

# undef identifier.

This is useful when we want to restrict the definition only to a particular part of the program.

## File inclusion:

The preprocessor directive "#include file name" can be used to include any file in to your program if the function s or macro definitions are present in an external file they can be included in your file

In the directive the filename is the name of the file containing the required definitions or functions alternatively the this directive can take the form

#include< filename >

Without double quotation marks. In this format the file will be searched in only standard directories.

The c preprocessor also supports a more general form of test condition #if directive. This takes the following form

#if constant expression

```
{
statement-1;
statemet2‘
....
....
}
#endif
```

the constant expression can be a logical expression such as test < = 3 etc

If the result of the constant expression is true then all the statements between the #if and #endif are included for processing otherwise they are skipped. The names TEST LEVEL etc., may be defined as macros.

**C++ Hand Book**  
**Version – October 2020**

TOPS Technologies

## Introduction to C++

Created by Bjarne Stroustrup of AT&T Bell Labs as an extension of C, C++ is an object-oriented computer language used in the development of enterprise and commercial applications. Microsoft's Visual C++ became the premier language of choice among developers and programmers.

As a procedural programming language, C++ uses program structures such as i/o (input/output), assignment statement, iterative statements, conditional statements and subprograms. Data structures of C++ include integer, real, char, arrays, structs and pointers.

Employment opportunities are numerous and well paid for C++ programmers and developers looking to work in the field of Software Engineering or as an IT Professional. Oftentimes, C++ Professionals will also be familiar with C, Linux, Unix, Java, .NET and VB (Visual Basic). Developers working with C++ can expect to participate in a variety of programming opportunities: developing systems for trading applications for an Investment Bank, developing cutting edge software applications for groundbreaking new technologies (Smartphone, PDA, etc.) to creating applications for 3-D Imaging Software or spectroscopic systems.

C++ Tutorials available in this section include explanations for simple to more advanced concepts of C++ in detail with sample coding information. A new programmer or developer interested in learning about C++ programming language and finding out why C++ is one of the most widely used programming languages for creating large-scale applications can utilize the tutorials and articles on C++ made available in this section.

## Basic Concept of OOP and Structure of C++ Program:

Probably the best way to start learning a programming language is by writing a program.

Therefore, here is our  
first program:

```
// my first program in C++

#include <iostream.h>
int main ()
{
 cout << "Hello World!";
 return 0;
}
--- Output ---
Hello World!
```

We are going to look line by line at the code we have just written:

### // my first program in C++

This is a comment line. All lines beginning with two slash signs (//) are considered comments and do not have any effect on the behavior of the program. The programmer can use them to include short explanations or observations within the source code itself. In this case, the line is a brief description of what our program is.

### #include <iostream.h>

# TOPS Technologies

---

Lines beginning with a hash sign (#) are directives for the preprocessor. They are not regular code lines with expressions but indications for the compiler's preprocessor. In this case the directive #include <iostream> tells the preprocessor to include the iostream standard file. This specific file (iostream) includes the declarations of the basic standard input-output library in C++, and it is included because its functionality is going to be used later in the program.

## **using namespace std;**

All the elements of the standard C++ library are declared within what is called a namespace, the namespace with the name *std*. So *in order to access its functionality we declare with this expression that* we will be using these entities. This line is very frequent in C++ programs that use the standard library, and in fact it will be included in most of the source codes included in these tutorials.

## **int main ()**

This line corresponds to the beginning of the definition of the main function. The main function is the point by where all C++ programs start their execution, independently of its location within the source code.

- The // in first line is used for representing comment in the program.
- The second line of the program has a # symbol which represents the preprocessor directive followed by header file to be included placed between <>.
- The next structure present in the program is the class definition. This starts with the keyword class followed by class name employee. Within the class are data and functions. The data defined in the class are generally private and functions are public. These explanations we will be detailed in later sections. The class declaration ends with a semicolon.
- main() function is present in all C++ programs.
- An object e1 is created in employee class. Using this e1 the functions present in the employee class are accessed and there by data are accessed.
- The input named ename and eno is received using the input statement named cin and the values are outputted using the output statement named cout.

## **Characteristics of c++**

- Emphasis is on data rather than procedure
- Programs are divided into what are known as objects
- Data and Functions are tied together in the data structure
- Data is hidden and can not be accessed by external functions
- Objects may communicate with each other through functions
- New data and functions can be easily added whenever necessary
- Bottom-up approach

## **Object Oriented Programming:**

Before starting to learn C++ it is essential to have a basic knowledge of the concepts of Object oriented programming. Some of the important object oriented features are namely:

- Objects
- Classes

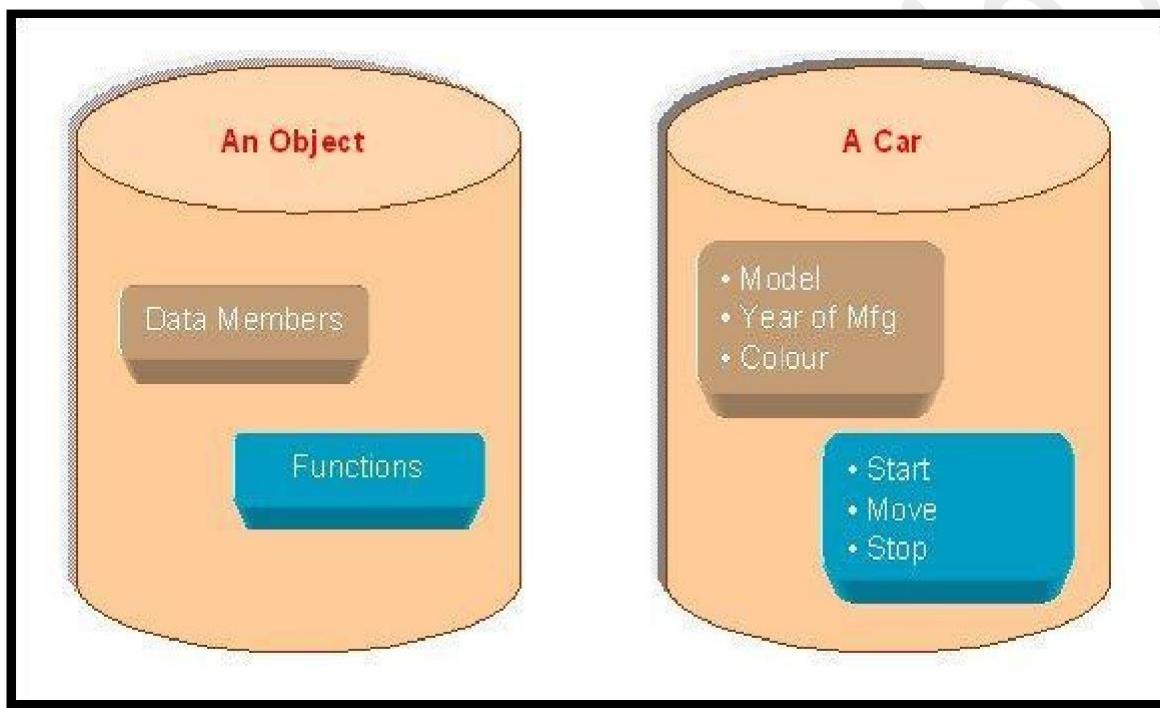
# TOPS Technologies

- Inheritance
- Data Abstraction
- Data Encapsulation
- Polymorphism
- Overloading
- Reusability

In order to understand the basic concepts in C++, a programmer must have a good knowledge of the basic terminology in object-oriented programming. Below is a brief outline of the concepts of object-oriented programming languages :

## Objects:

Object is the basic unit of object-oriented programming. Objects are identified by its unique name. An object represents a particular instance of a class. There can be more than one instance of a class. Each instance of a class can hold its own relevant data.



An Object is a collection of data members and associated member functions also known as methods.

## Classes:

Classes are data types based on which objects are created. Objects with similar properties and methods are grouped together to form a Class. Thus a Class represents a set of individual objects. Characteristics of an object are represented in a class as Properties. The actions that can be performed by objects become functions of the class and are referred to as Methods.

For example consider we have a Class of Cars under which Santro Xing, Alto and WaganR represents individual Objects. In this context each Car Object will have its own, Model, Year of Manufacture, Color, Top Speed, Engine Power etc., which form Properties of the Car class and the associated actions i.e., object functions like Start, Move, and Stop form the Methods of Car

# **TOPS Technologies**

---

Class.

No memory is allocated when a class is created. Memory is allocated only when an object is created, i.e., when an instance of a class is created.

## **Inheritance:**

Inheritance is the process of forming a new class from an existing class or base class. The base class is also known as parent class or super class. The new class that is formed is called derived class. Derived class is also known as a child class or sub class. Inheritance helps in reducing the overall code size of the program, which is an important concept in object-oriented programming.

## **Data Abstraction:**

Data Abstraction increases the power of programming language by creating user defined data types. Data Abstraction also represents the needed information in the program without presenting the details.

## **Data Encapsulation:**

Data Encapsulation combines data and functions into a single unit called Class. When using Data Encapsulation, data is not accessed directly; it is only accessible through the functions present inside the class. Data Encapsulation enables the important concept of data hiding possible.

## **Polymorphism:**

Polymorphism allows routines to use variables of different types at different times. An operator or function can be given different meanings or functions. Polymorphism refers to a single function or multi-functioning operator performing in different ways.

## **Overloading:**

Overloading is one type of Polymorphism. It allows an object to have different meanings, depending on its context. When an existing operator or function begins to operate on new data type, or class, it is understood to be overloaded.

## **Reusability:**

This term refers to the ability for multiple programmers to use the same written and debugged existing class of data. This is a time saving device and adds code efficiency to the language. Additionally, the programmer can incorporate new features to the existing class, further developing the application and allowing users to achieve increased performance. This time saving feature optimizes code, helps in gaining secured applications and facilitates easier maintenance on the application.

The implementation of each of the above object-oriented programming features for C++ will be highlighted in later sections.

```
#include <iostream.h> // Preprocessor
directive class employee // Class
Declaration
{
private:
char empname[50]; int empno;

public:
void getvalue()
{
number
}

cout<<"INPUT Employee Name:";
cin>>empname;// waiting input from the
Keyboard for the name
cout<<"INPUT Employee Number:";
cin>>empno; // waiting input from the
Keyboard for the
void displayvalue(){
cout<<"Employee Name:"<< empname <<
endl; // displays the employee name
cout<<"Employee Number:"<< empno <<
endl; // displays the employee number
}
};

void main()
{
employee e1; // Creation of Object
e1.getvalue(); // the getvalue method is being
called
e1.displayvalue(); // the displayvalue method is
being called
}
```

## Output:

Enter Employee Name: Jigar  
Enter Employee Number: 35

Employee Name: Jigar  
Employee Number:35  
Press any key to continue.....

## Comments

Comments are parts of the source code disregarded by the compiler. They simply do nothing. Their purpose is only to allow the programmer to insert notes or descriptions embedded within the source code.

C++ supports two ways to insert comments:

```
// line comment single line
/* block comment */ multi line
```

## Declaration of Variable

In order to use a variable in C++, we must first declare it specifying which data type we want it to be. The syntax to declare a new variable is to write the specifier of the desired data type (like int, bool, float...) followed by a valid variable identifier.

### For example:

```
int a;
float mynumber;
```

These are two valid declarations of variables. The first one declares a variable of type int with the identifier a. The second one declares a variable of type float with the identifier mynumber. Once declared, the variables a and mynumber can be used within the rest of their scope in the program.

If you are going to declare more than one variable of the same type, you can declare all of them in a single statement by separating their identifiers with commas.

### For example:

```
int a, b, c;
```

```
// operating with variables
#include <iostream.h>
int main ()
{
// declaring variables:
int a, b;
int result;
// process:
a = 5;
b = 2;
a = a + 1;
result = a - b;
// print out the result:
cout << result;
// terminate the program:
```

```
return 0;
```

```
}
```

## Data Type

Every variable in C++ can store a value. However, the type of value which the variable can store has to be specified by the programmer.

C++ supports the following inbuilt data types:- int (to store integer values), float (to store decimal values) and char (to store characters), bool (to store Boolean value either 0 or 1) and void (signifies absence of information).

### Integer data type

Integer (int) variables are used to store integer values like 34, 68704 etc. To declare a variable of type integer, type keyword int followed by the name of the variable. You can give any name to a variable but there are certain constraints, they are specified in Identifiers section.

#### For example, the statement

```
int sum;
```

Declares that sum is a variable of type int. You can assign a value to it now or later. In order to assign values along with declaration use the assignment operator (=).

```
int sum = 25;
```

assigns value 25 to variable sum.

There are three types of integer variables in C++, short, int and long int. All of them store values of type integer but the size of values they can store increases from short to long int. This is because of the size occupied by them in memory of the computer. The size which they can take is dependent on type of computer and varies. More is the size, more the value they can hold. For example, int variable has 2 or 4 bytes reserved in memory so it can hold  $2^{32} = 65536$  values. Variables can be signed or unsigned depending they store only positive values or both positive and negative values. And short, variable has 2 bytes. Long int variable has 4 bytes.

### Float Data Type

To store decimal values, you use float data type. Floating point data types comes in three sizes, namely float, double and long double. The difference is in the length of value and amount of precision which they can take and it increases from float to long double. For example, statement

```
float average = 2.34;
```

declares a variable average which is of type float and has the initial value 2.34

### Character Data Type

A variable of type char stores one character. Its size of a variable of type char is typically 1 byte. The statement

**char name = 'c';**

declares a variable of type char (can hold characters) and has the initial values as character c. Note that value has to be under single quotes.

The C-style casting takes the syntax as....

(type) expression

C++-style casting is as below namely:

type (expression)

Let us see the concept of **type casting in C++** with a small example:

```
#include<conio.h>
#include <iostream.h>
void main()
{
 int a;
 float b,c;

 cout<< -Enter the value of a:|;
 cin>>a;
 cout<< -\n Enter the value of b:|;
 cin>>b;

 c = float(a)+b;

 cout<<|\n The value of c is:|<<c;
}
```

## **The output of the above program is....**

Enter the value of a: 10

Enter the value of b: 12.5

The value of c is: 22.5

## **Key words**

Keywords are the reserved words in any language which have a special pre defined meaning and cannot be used for any other purpose. You cannot use keywords for naming variables or some other purpose. We saw the use of keywords main, include, return, int in our first C++ program.

## **Identifiers**

Identifiers are the name of functions, variables, classes, arrays etc. which you create while writing your programs. Identifiers are just like names in any language. There are certain rules to name identifiers in C++.

They are:-

- Identifiers must contain combinations of digits, characters and underscore (\_).
- Identifier names cannot start with digit.
- Keyword cannot be used as an identifier name and upper case and lower case are distinct.
- Identifier names can contain any combination of characters as opposed to the restriction of 31 letters in C.

## **Constants**

Constants are fixed values which cannot change. For example 123, 12.23, 'a' are constants. Now it's time to move on to our next tutorial Input values using cin operator.

## **Variable Scope in Functions:**

The scope of the variables can be broadly be classified as

- Local Variables
- Global Variables

## Local Variables:

The variables defined local to the block of the function would be accessible only within the block of the function and not outside the function. Such variables are called local variables. That is in other words the scope of the local variables is limited to the function in which these variables are declared.

Let us see this with a small example:

```
#include <iostream.h>
int exforsys(int,int);
void main()
{
 int b;
 int s=5,u=6;
 b=exforsys(s,u);
 cout << "\n The Output is:" << b;
}

int exforsys(int x,int y)
{
 int z;
 z=x+y;
 return(z);
}
```

### The output of the above example is:

```
The Output is:11Press any key to continue . . .
```

In the above program the variables x, y, z are accessible only inside the function exforsys( ) and their scope is limited only to the function exforsys( ) and not outside the function. Thus the variables x, y, z are local to the function exforsys. Similarly one would not be able to access variable b inside the function exforsys as such. This is because variable b is local to function main.

## Global Variables:

Global variables are one which are visible in any part of the program code and can be used within all functions and outside all functions used in the program. The method of declaring global variables is to declare the variable outside the function or block.

For instance:

```
Int x,y,z;
void main()
```

```
{
}
```

In the above the integer variables x, y and z and the float variables a, b and c which are declared outside the block are global variables and the integer variables s and u and the float variables w and q which are declared inside the function block are called local variables.

Thus the scope of global variables is between the point of declaration and the end of compilation unit whereas scope of local variables is between the point of declaration and the end of innermost enclosing compound statement.

Let us see an example which has number of local and global variable declarations with number of inner blocks to understand the concept of local and global variables scope in detail.

```
int g;
void main()
{
 ...
 int a;
 {
 int b;
 b=25;
 a=45;
 g=65; // end of scope for variable b
 }
 a=50;
 exforsys();
 ...
} // end of scope for variable a

void exforsys()
{
 g = 30; //Scope of g is throughout the program and so is used between function calls
}
```

In the context of scope of variables in functions comes the important concept named as storage class which is discussed in detail in next section.

## Storage Class

### What is storage Class?

Storage class defined for a variable determines the accessibility and longevity of the variable. The accessibility of the variable relates to the portion of the program that has access to the variable. The longevity of the variable refers to the length of time the variable exists within the program.

### Automatic Storage Class

Variables defined within the function body are called automatic variables. Auto is the keyword used to declare automatic variables. By default and without the use of a

Keyword, the variables defined inside a function are automatic variables.

## External Storage Class

External variables are also called global variables. External variables are defined outside any function, memory is set aside once it has been declared and remains until the end of the program. These variables are accessible by any function. This is mainly utilized when a programmer wants to make use of a variable and access the variable among different function calls.

## Static Storage Class

The static automatic variables, as with local variables, are accessible only within the function in which it is defined. Static automatic variables exist until the program ends in the same manner as external variables. In order to maintain value between function calls, the static variable takes its presence.

## C++ Character Functions

The C++ char functions are extremely useful for testing and transforming characters. These functions are widely used and accepted. In order to use character functions header file <cctype> is included into the program. Some of the commonly used character functions are:

- isalnum()- The function isalnum() returns nonzero value if its argument is either an alphabet or integer. If the character is not an integer or alphabet then it returns zero.
- isalpha() - The function isalpha() returns nonzero if the character is an uppercase or lower case letter otherwise it returns zero.
- iscntrl() - The function iscntrl() returns nonzero if the character is a control character otherwise it returns zero.
- isdigit()- The function isdigit() returns nonzero if the character is a digit, i.e. through 0 to 9. It returns zero for non digit character.
- isgraph()- The function isgraph() returns nonzero if the character is any printable character other than space otherwise it returns zero.
- islower()- The function islower() returns nonzero for a lowercase letter otherwise it returns zero.
- isprint()- The function isprint() returns nonzero for printable character including space otherwise it returns zero.
- isspace()- The function isspace() returns nonzero for space, horizontal tab, newline character, vertical tab, formfeed, carriage return; otherwise it returns zero.
- ispunct()- The function ispunct() returns nonzero for punctuation characters otherwise it returns zero. The punctuation character excludes alphabets, digits and space.
- isupper()- The function isupper() returns nonzero for an uppercase letter otherwise it returns zero.
- tolower()- The function tolower() changes the upper case letter to its equivalent lower case letter. The character other than upper case letter remains unchanged.

# TOPS Technologies

---

toupper()- The function toupper() changes the lower case letter to its equivalent upper case letter. The character other than lower case letter remains unchanged.

isxdigit()- The function isxdigit() returns nonzero for hexadecimal digit i.e. digit from 0 to 9, alphabet 'a' to 'f' or 'A' to 'F' otherwise it returns zero.

## Function

Using functions we can structure our programs in a more modular way, accessing all the potential that structured programming can offer to us in C++.

A function is a group of statements that is executed when it is called from some point of the program. The following is its format:

```
ret_type name (parameter1, parameter2, ...) { statements }
```

where:

- type is the data type specifier of the data returned by the function.
- name is the identifier by which it will be possible to call the function.
- parameters (as many as needed): Each parameter consists of a data type specifier followed by an identifier, like any regular variable declaration (for example: int x) and which acts within the function as a regular local variable. They allow to pass arguments to the function when it is called. The different parameters are separated by commas.
- statements is the function's body. It is a block of statements surrounded by braces { }.

Here you have the first function example:

```
#include <iostream.h>
int addition (int a, int b)
{
int r;
r=a+b;
return (r);
}

int main()
{
int z;
z = addition (5,3);
cout << "The result is " << z;
return 0;
}
```

## Output:

The result is 8

In order to examine this code, first of all remember something said at the beginning of this tutorial: a C++ program always begins its execution by the main function. So we will begin

# TOPS Technologies

---

there.

We can see how the main function begins by declaring the variable z of type int. Right after that, we see a call to a function called addition. Paying attention we will be able to see the similarity between the structure of the call to the function and the declaration of the function itself some code lines above:

```
int addition (int a, int b)
↑ ↑
z = addition (5 , 3);
```

The parameters and arguments have a clear correspondence. Within the main function we called to addition passing two values: 5 and 3, that correspond to the int a and int b parameters declared for function addition.

At the point at which the function is called from within main, the control is lost by main and passed to function addition. The value of both arguments passed in the call (5 and 3) are copied to the local variables int a and int b within the function.

Function addition declares another local variable (int r), and by means of the expression  $r=a+b$ , it assigns to r the result of a plus b. Because the actual parameters passed for a and b are 5 and 3 respectively, the result is 8.

The following line of code:

```
return (r);
```

finalizes function addition, and returns the control back to the function that called it in the first place (in this case, main). At this moment the program follows its regular course from the same point at which it was interrupted by the call to addition. But additionally, because the return statement in function addition specified a value: the content of variable r (return (r);), which at that moment had a value of 8. This value becomes the value of evaluating the function call.

```
int addition (int a, int b)
↓ 8
z = addition (5 , 3);
```

So being the value returned by a function the value given to the function call itself when it is evaluated, the variable z will be set to the value returned by addition (5, 3), that is 8. To explain it another way, you can imagine that the call to a function (addition (5,3)) is literally replaced by the value it returns (8).

The following line of code in main is:

```
cout << "The result is " <<
z;
```

That, as you may already expect, produces the printing of the result on the screen.

## Function With No type use of Void:

If you remember the syntax of a function declaration:

type name ( argument1, argument2 ...) statement

you will see that the declaration begins with a type, that is the type of the function itself (i.e., the type of the datum that will be returned by the function with the return statement). But what if we

want to return no value?

Imagine that we want to make a function just to show a message on the screen. We do not need it to return any value. In this case we should use the void type specifier for the function. This is a special specifier that indicates absence of type.

```
#include <iostream.h>
void printmessage ()
{
 cout <<"I'm a function!";
}

int main ()
{
 printmessage ();
 return 0;
}
```

#### Output:

```
I'm a function!
```

void can also be used in the function's parameter list to explicitly specify that we want the function to take no actual parameters when it is called. For example, function printmessage could have been declared as:

```
void printmessage (void)
{
 cout <<"I'm a function!";
}
```

Although it is optional to specify void in the parameter list. In C++, a parameter list can simply be left blank if we want a function with no parameters.

What you must always remember is that the format for calling a function includes specifying its name and enclosing its parameters between parentheses. The non-existence of parameters does not exempt us from the obligation to write the parentheses. For that reason the call to printmessage is:

```
printmessage();
```

The parentheses clearly indicate that this is a call to a function and not the name of a variable or some other C++ statement. The following call would have been incorrect:

```
printmessage;
```

#### Argument Passed By Value and Passed By Reference:

Until now, in all the functions we have seen, the arguments passed to the functions have been passed *by value*. This means that when calling a function with parameters, what we have passed to the function were copies of their values but never the variables themselves. For

# TOPS Technologies

example, suppose that we called our first function addition using the following code:

```
int x=5, y=3, z;
z = addition (x , y);
```

What we did in this case was to call to function addition passing the values of x and y, i.e. 5 and 3 respectively, but not the variables x and y themselves.

```
int addition (int a, int b)
{
 z = addition (5 , 3);
```

This way, when the function addition is called, the value of its local variables a and b become 5 and 3 respectively, but any modification to either a or b within the function addition will not have any effect in the values of x and y outside it, because variables x and y were not themselves passed to the function, but only copies of their values at the moment the function was called. But there might be some cases where you need to manipulate from inside a function the value of an external variable. For that purpose we can use arguments passed by reference, as in the function duplicate of the following example:

```
#include <iostream.h>
void duplicate (int *a, int *b, int *c)
{
 a*=2;
 b*=2;
 c*=2;
}
int main ()
{
 int x=1, y=3, z=7;
 duplicate (&x, &y, &z);
 cout << "x=" << x << ", y=" << y << ", z=" << z;
 return 0;
}
```

## Output:

x=2, y=6, z=14

The first thing that should call your attention is that in the declaration of duplicate the type of each parameter was followed by an ampersand sign (&). This ampersand is what specifies that their corresponding arguments are to be passed *by reference* instead of *by value*. When a variable is passed by reference we are not passing a copy of its value, but we are somehow passing the variable itself to the function and any modification that we do to the local variables will have an effect in their counterpart variables passed as arguments in the call to the function.

```
void duplicate (int& a,int& b,int& c)
{
 a*=2;
 b*=2;
 c*=2;
}
duplicate (x , y , z);
```

To explain it in another way, we associate a, b and c with the arguments passed on the function call (x, y and z) and any change that we do on a within the function will affect the value of x

# TOPS Technologies

---

outside it. Any change that we do on b will affect y, and the same with c and z. That is why our program's output, that shows the values stored in x, y and z after the call to duplicate, shows the values of all the three variables of main doubled.

If when declaring the following function:

```
void duplicate (int& a, int& b, int&
c)
```

we had declared it this way:

```
void duplicate (int a, int b, int c)
```

i.e., without the ampersand signs (&), we would have not passed the variables by reference, but a copy of their values instead, and therefore, the output on screen of our program would have been the values of x, y and z without having been modified.

Passing by reference is also an effective way to allow a function to return more than one value. For example, here is a function that returns the previous and next numbers of the first parameter passed.

```
#include <iostream.h>
void prevnext (int x, int& prev, int& next)
{
 prev = x-1;
 next = x+1;
}
int main ()
{
 int x=100, y, z;
 prevnext (x, y, z);
 cout <<"Previous=<< y <<", Next=<< z;
 return 0;
}
```

## Output:

Previous=99, Next=101

## Default Values in Parameters:

When declaring a function we can specify a default value for each of the last parameters. This value will be used if the corresponding argument is left blank when calling to the function. To do that, we simply have to use the assignment operator and a value for the arguments in the function declaration. If a value for that parameter is not passed when the function is called, the default value is used, but if a value is specified this default value is ignored and the passed value is used instead. For example:

```
#include <iostream.h>
int divide (int a, int b=2)
{
 int r;
 r=a/b;
 return (r);
}
int main ()
```

```
{
 cout << divide (12);
 cout << endl;
 cout << divide (20,4);
 return 0;
}
```

## Output:

```
6
5
```

As we can see in the body of the program there are two calls to function divide. In the first one:

divide (12)

we have only specified one argument, but the function divide allows up to two. So the function divide has assumed that the second parameter is 2 since that is what we have specified to happen if this parameter was not passed (notice the function declaration, which finishes with int b=2, not just int b). Therefore the result of this function call is 6 (12/2).

In the second call:

divide (20,4)

there are two parameters, so the default value for b (int b=2) is ignored and b takes the value passed as argument, that is 4, making the result returned equal to 5 (20/4).

## Overloaded Functions:

In C++ two different functions can have the same name if their parameter types or number are different. That means that you can give the same name to more than one function if they have either a different number of parameters or different types in their parameters. For example:

```
#include <iostream.h>
int operate (int a, int b)
{
 return (a*b);
}
float operate (float a, float b)
{
 return (a/b);
}
int main ()
{
 int x=5,y=2;
 float n=5.0,m=2.0;
 cout << operate (x,y);
 cout <<"\n";
 cout << operate (n,m);
 cout <<"\n";
 return 0;
```

```
}
```

**Output:**

```
10
2.5
```

In this case we have defined two functions with the same name, operate, but one of them accepts two parameters of type int and the other one accepts them of type float. The compiler knows which one to call in each case by examining the types passed as arguments when the function is called. If it is called with two ints as its arguments it calls to the function that has two int parameters in its prototype and if it is called with two floats it will call to the one which has two float parameters in its prototype.

In the first call to operate the two arguments passed are of type int, therefore, the function with the first prototype is called; This function returns the result of multiplying both parameters. While the second call passes two arguments of type float, so the function with the second prototype is called. This one has a different behavior: it divides one parameter by the other. So the behavior of a call to operate depends on the type of the arguments passed because the function has been *overloaded*.

Notice that a function cannot be overloaded only by its return type. At least one of its parameters must have a different type.

**Inline functions.**

The inline specifier indicates the compiler that inline substitution is preferred to the usual function call mechanism for a specific function. This does not change the behavior of a function itself, but is used to suggest to the compiler that the code generated by the function body is inserted at each point the function is called, instead of being inserted only once and perform a regular call to it, which generally involves some additional overhead in running time.

The format for its declaration is:

```
inline type name (arguments ...) { instructions ... }
```

and the call is just like the call to any other function. You do not have to include the inline keyword when calling the function, only in its declaration.

Most compilers already optimize code to generate inline functions when it is more convenient. This specifier only indicates the compiler that inline is preferred for this function.

**Example**

```
#include <iostream.h>
inline int add(int a,int b)
{
 return a+b;
}
void main()
{
```

```
int x,y;
 cout << -\n Enter the Input Value: ||;
 cin>>x>>y;
 cout<<\n The Output is: — <<add(x,y);
}
```

**Output:**

Enter the Input Value: 10 20

The Output is: 30

**Recursive Function**

Recursivity is the property that functions have to be called by themselves. It is useful for many tasks, like sorting or calculate the factorial of numbers. For example, to obtain the factorial of a number ( $n!$ ) the mathematical formula would be:

$$n! = n * (n-1) * (n-2) * (n-3) \dots * 1$$

more concretely,  $5!$  (factorial of 5) would be:

$$5! = 5 * 4 * 3 * 2 * 1 = 120$$

and a recursive function to calculate this in C++ could be:

```
#include <iostream.h>
long factorial (long a)
{
if(a > 1)
return (a * factorial (a-1));
else
return (1);
}
int main ()
{
long number;
cout <<"Please type a number: ";
cin >> number;
cout << number << " = " << factorial (number);
return 0;
}
```

**Output:**

Please type a number: 9

9 = 362880

Notice how in function factorial we included a call to itself, but only if the argument passed was greater than 1, since otherwise the function would perform an infinite recursive loop in which once it arrived to 0 it would continue multiplying by all the negative numbers (probably provoking a stack overflow error on runtime).

This function has a limitation because of the data type we used in its design (long) for more simplicity. The results given will not be valid for values much greater than  $10!$  or  $15!$ , depending

on the system you compile it.

## Declaring functions.

Until now, we have defined all of the functions before the first appearance of calls to them in the source code. These calls were generally in function main which we have always left at the end of the source code. If you try to repeat some of the examples of functions described so far, but placing the function main before any of the other functions that were called from within it, you will most likely obtain compiling errors. The reason is that to be able to call a function it must have been declared in some earlier point of the code, like we have done in all our examples.

But there is an alternative way to avoid writing the whole code of a function before it can be used in main or in some other function. This can be achieved by declaring just a prototype of the function before it is used, instead of the entire definition. This declaration is shorter than the entire definition, but significant enough for the compiler to determine its return type and the types of its parameters.

Its form is:

```
type name (argument_type1, argument_type2, ...);
```

It is identical to a function definition, except that it does not include the body of the function itself (i.e., the function statements that in normal definitions are enclosed in braces { }) and instead of that we end the prototype declaration with a mandatory semicolon (;).

The parameter enumeration does not need to include the identifiers, but only the type specifiers. The inclusion of a name for each parameter as in the function definition is optional in the prototype declaration. For example, we can declare a function called protofunction with two int parameters with any of the following declarations:

- 1 *int protofunction (int first, int second);*
- 2 *int protofunction (int, int);*

Anyway, including a name for each variable makes the prototype more legible.

```
#include <iostream>
using namespace std;

void odd (int a);
void even (int a);

int main ()
{
int i;
do {
 cout <<"Type a number (0 to exit): ";
 cin >> i;
 odd (i);
} while (i!=0);
return 0;
}
```

```
void odd (int a)
{
if ((a%2)!=0) cout <<"Number is odd.\n";
else even (a);
}

void even (int a)
{
if ((a%2)==0) cout <<"Number is even.\n";
else odd (a);}
```

**Output:**

Type a number (0 to exit): 9  
Number is odd.  
Type a number (0 to exit): 6  
Number is even.  
Type a number (0 to exit): 1030  
Number is even.  
Type a number (0 to exit): 0  
Number is even.

This example is indeed not an example of efficiency. I am sure that at this point you can already make a program with the same result, but using only half of the code lines that have been used in this example. Anyway this example illustrates how prototyping works. Moreover, in this concrete example the prototyping of at least one of the two functions is necessary in order to compile                       the                       code                       without                       errors.

The first things that we see are the declaration of functions odd and even:

```
void odd (int a);
void even (int a);
```

This allows these functions to be used before they are defined, for example, in main, which now is located where some people find it to be a more logical place for the start of a program: the beginning of the source code.

Anyway, the reason why this program needs at least one of the functions to be declared before it is defined is because in odd there is a call to even and in even there is a call to odd. If none of the two functions had been previously declared, a compilation error would happen, since either odd would not be visible from even (because it has still not been declared), or even would not be visible from odd (for the same reason).

Having the prototype of all functions together in the same place within the source code is found practical by some programmers, and this can be easily achieved by declaring all functions prototypes at the beginning of a program.

## Variable Scope in Functions:

The scope of the variables can be broadly be classified as

- Local Variables
- Global Variables

## Local Variables:

The variables defined local to the block of the function would be accessible only within the block of the function and not outside the function. Such variables are called local variables. That is in other words the scope of the local variables is limited to the function in which these variables are declared.

Let us see this with a small example:

```
#include <iostream.h>
int exforsys(int,int);
void main()
{
 int b;
 int s=5,u=6;
 b=exforsys(s,u);
 cout << "\n The Output is:" << b;
}

int exforsys(int x,int y)
{
 int z;
 z=x+y;
 return(z);
}
```

**The output of the above example is:**

The Output is:11Press any key to continue . . .

In the above program the variables x, y, z are accessible only inside the function exforsys( ) and their scope is limited only to the function exforsys( ) and not outside the function. Thus the variables x, y, z are local to the function exforsys. Similarly one would not be able to access variable b inside the function exforsys as such. This is because variable b is local to function main.

## Global Variables:

Global variables are one which are visible in any part of the program code and can be used within all functions and outside all functions used in the program. The method of declaring global variables is to declare the variable outside the function or block.

For instance:

```
Int x,y,z;
```

```
void main()
{
}
```

In the above the integer variables x, y and z and the float variables a, b and c which are declared outside the block are global variables and the integer variables s and u and the float variables w and q which are declared inside the function block are called local variables.

Thus the scope of global variables is between the point of declaration and the end of compilation unit whereas scope of local variables is between the point of declaration and the end of innermost enclosing compound statement.

Let us see an example which has number of local and global variable declarations with number of inner blocks to understand the concept of local and global variables scope in detail.

```
int g;
void main()
{
 ...
 int a;
 {
 int b;
 b=25;
 a=45;
 g=65; // end of scope for variable b
 }
 a=50;
 exforsys();
 ...
} // end of scope for variable a

void exforsys()
{
 g = 30; // Scope of g is throughout the program and so is used between function calls
}
```

In the context of scope of variables in functions comes the important concept named as storage class which is discussed in detail in next section.

### Inline Function:

#### What is Inline Function?

Inline functions are functions where the call is made to inline functions. The actual code then gets placed in the calling program.

#### Reason for the need of Inline Function:

Normally, a function call transfers the control from the calling program to the function and after the execution of the program returns the control back to the calling program after the function call. These concepts of function save program space and memory space and are used because the function is stored only in one place and is only executed when it is called. This

execution may be time consuming since the registers and other processes must be saved before the function gets called.

The extra time needed and the process of saving is valid for larger functions. If the function is short, the programmer may wish to place the code of the function in the calling program in order for it to be executed. This type of function is best handled by the inline function. In this situation, the programmer may be wondering "why not write the short code repeatedly inside the program wherever needed instead of going for inline function?". Although this could accomplish the task, the problem lies in the loss of clarity of the program. If the programmer repeats the same code many times, there will be a loss of clarity in the program. The alternative approach is to allow inline functions to achieve the same purpose, with the concept of functions.

### **What happens when an inline function is written?**

The inline function takes the format as a normal function but when it is compiled it is compiled as inline code. The function is placed separately as inline function, thus adding readability to the source program. When the program is compiled, the code present in function body is replaced in the place of function call.

### **General Format of inline Function:**

The general format of inline function is as follows:

inline datatype function\_name(arguments)

The keyword inline specified in the above example, designates the function as inline function. For example, if a programmer wishes to have a function named exforsys with return value as integer and with no arguments as inline it is written as follows:

```
inline int exforsys()
```

### **Example:**

The concept of inline functions:

```
#include <iostream.h>
int exforsys(int);
void main()
{
 int x;
 cout << "n Enter the Input Value: ";
 cin>>x;
 cout << "n The Output is: " << exforsys(x);
}

inline int exforsys(int x1)
{
 return 5*x1;
}
```

The output of the above program is:

```
Enter the Input Value: 10
The Output is: 50Press any key to continue . . .
```

The output would be the same even when the inline function is written solely as a function. The concept, however, is different. When the program is compiled, the code present in the inline function exforsys( ) is replaced in the place of function call in the calling program. The concept of inline function is used in this example because the function is a small line of code. The above example, when compiled, would have the structure as follows:

```
#include <iostream.h>
int exforsys(int);
void main()
{
 int x;
 cout << "n Enter the Input Value: ";
 cin>>x;
 cout << "n The Output is: " << exforsys(x);
}

inline int exforsys(int x1)
{
 return 5*x1;
}
```

When the above program is written as normal function the compiled code would look like below:

```
#include <iostream.h>

int exforsys(int);
void main()
{
 int x;
 cout << "n Enter the Input Value: ";
 cin>>x;
 cout << "n The Output is: " << exforsys(x); //Call is made to the function exforsys
}

inline int exforsys(int x1)
{
 return 5*x1;
}
```

A programmer must make wise choices when to use inline functions. Inline functions will save time and are useful if the function is very small. If the function is large, use of inline functions must be avoided.

## Friend Functions

### The Need for Friend Function:

As discussed in the earlier sections on access specifiers, when a data is declared as private inside a class, then it is not accessible from outside the class. A function that is not a member or an external class will not be able to access the private data. A programmer may have a situation where he or she would need to access private data from non-member functions and external classes. For handling such cases, the concept of Friend functions is a useful tool.

### What is a Friend Function?

A friend function is used for accessing the non-public members of a class. A class can allow non-member functions and other classes to access its own private data, by making them friends. Thus, a friend function is an ordinary function or a member of another class.

### How to define and use Friend Function in C++:

The friend function is written as any other normal function, except the function declaration of these functions is preceded with the keyword friend. The friend function must have the class to which it is declared as friend passed to it in argument.

### Some important points to note while using friend functions in C++:

- The keyword friend is placed only in the function declaration of the friend function and not in the function definition.
- It is possible to declare a function as friend in any number of classes.
- When a class is declared as a friend, the friend class has access to the private data of the class that made this a friend.
- A friend function, even though it is not a member function, would have the rights to access the private members of the class.
- It is possible to declare the friend function as either private or public.
- The function can be invoked without the use of an object. The friend function has its argument as objects, seen in example below.

```
#include <iostream.h>

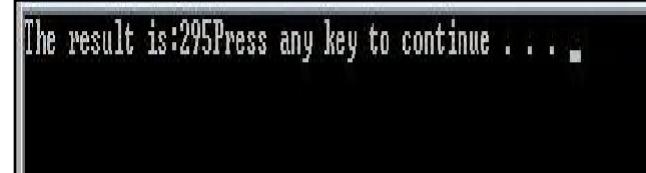
class exforsys
{
private:
 int a,b;
public:
 void test()
 {
 a=100;
 b=200;
 }
 friend int compute(exforsys e1);
//Friend Function Declaration with keyword friend and with the //object of class exforsys to
```

```
which it is friend passed to it
};

int compute(exforsys e1)
{
//Friend Function Definition which has access to private data
 return int(e1.a+e1.b)-5;
}

void main()
{
 exforsys e;
 e.test();
 cout << "The result is:" << compute(e);
//Calling of Friend Function with object as argument.
}
```

The output of the above program is



The function `compute()` is a non-member function of the class `exforsys`. In order to make this function have access to the private data `a` and `b` of class `exforsys`, it is created as a friend function for the class `exforsys`. As a first step, the function `compute()` is declared as friend in the class `exforsys` as:

```
friend int compute (exforsys e1)
```

The keyword `friend` is placed before the function. The function definition is written as a normal function and thus, the function has access to the private data `a` and `b` of the class `exforsys`. It is declared as friend inside the class, the private data values `a` and `b` are added, 5 is subtracted from the result, giving 295 as the result. This is returned by the function and thus the output is displayed as shown above.

## Scope Resolution Operator

Member functions can be defined within the class definition or separately using **scope resolution operator, ::**. Defining a member function within the class definition declares the function **inline**, even if you do not use the `inline` specifier. So either you can define **Volume()** function as below:

```
class Box
{
public:
 double length; // Length of a box
```

```
double breadth; // Breadth of a box
double height; // Height of a box

double getVolume(void)
{
 return length * breadth * height;
}
};
```

## Arrays

### What is an array?

An array is a group of elements of the same type that are placed in contiguous memory locations.

That means that, for example, we can store 5 values of type int in an array without having to declare 5 different variables, each one with a different identifier. Instead of that, using an array we can store 5 different values of the same type, int for example, with a unique identifier.

### Initializing arrays

When declaring a regular array of local scope (within a function, for example), if we do not specify otherwise, its elements will not be initialized to any value by default, so their content will be undetermined until we store some value in them. The elements of global and static arrays, on the other hand, are automatically initialized with their default values, which for all fundamental types this means they are filled with zeros.

### How to access an array element?

You can access an element of an array by adding an index to a unique identifier.

```
#include <iostream>
int billy [] = {16, 2, 77, 40, 12071};
int n, result=0;

int main ()
{
 for (n=0 ; n<5 ; n++)
 {
 result += billy[n];
 }
 cout << result;
 return 0;
}
```

### Output:

12206

Press any key to continue

## What is a Multidimensional Array?

int Exforsys[3][4];

It is represented internally as:

Exforsys Data Type: int

	0	1	2	3
0				
1				
2				

## How to access the elements in the Multidimensional Array

Exforsys Data Type: int

	0	1	2	3
0				
1				
2				

Based on the above two-dimensional arrays, it is possible to handle multidimensional arrays of any number of rows and columns in C++ programming language. This is all occupied in memory. Better utilization of memory must also be made.

## Multidimensional Array Example:

```
#include <iostream.h>
const int ROW=4;
const int COLUMN =3;
void main()
{
 int i,j;
 int Exforsys[ROW][COLUMN];
 for(i=0;i < ROW;i++) //goes through the ROW elements
 for(j=0;j < COLUMN;j++) //goes through the COLUMN elements
 {
 cout << "Enter value of Row " << i+1;
 cout << ",Column " << j+1 << ":";
 cin>>Exforsys[i][j];
 }
 cout << "\n\n\n";
 cout << " COLUMN\n";
 cout << " 1 2 3";
 for(i=0;i < ROW;i++)
 {
 cout << "\nROW " << i+1;
 for(j=0;j < COLUMN;j++)
 cout << Exforsys[i][j];
 }
}
```

```
}
```

## Static in C++ Class

We can define class members static using **static** keyword. When we declare a member of a class as static it means no matter how many objects of the class are created, there is only one copy of the static member.

A static member is shared by all objects of the class. All static data is initialized to zero when the first object is created, if no other initialization is present. We can't put it in the class definition but it can be initialized outside the class as done in the following example by redeclaring the static variable, using the scope resolution operator `::` to identify which class it belongs to.

```
class Box
{
public:
 static int objectCount;
 // Constructor definition
 Box(double l=2.0, double b=2.0, double h=2.0)
 {
 cout << "Constructor called." << endl;
 length = l;
 breadth = b;
 height = h;
 // Increase every time object is created
 objectCount++;
 }
 double Volume()
 {
 return length * breadth * height;
 }
private:
 double length; // Length of a box
 double breadth; // Breadth of a box
 double height; // Height of a box
};

// Initialize static member of class Box
int Box::objectCount = 0;

int main(void)
{
 Box Box1(3.3, 1.2, 1.5); // Declare box1
 Box Box2(8.5, 6.0, 2.0); // Declare box2
 // Print total number of objects.
 cout << "Total objects: " << Box::objectCount << endl;
}
```

**Output:**

Constructor called.

Constructor called.

Total objects: 2

## Static Function Members

By declaring a function member as static, you make it independent of any particular object of the class. A static member function can be called even if no objects of the class exist and the static functions are accessed using only the class name and the scope resolution operator ::.

A static member function can only access static data member, other static member functions and any other functions from outside the class.

Static member functions have a class scope and they do not have access to the this pointer of the class. You could use a static member function to determine whether some objects of the class have been created or not.

```
class Box
{
public:
 static int objectCount;
 // Constructor definition
 Box(double l=2.0, double b=2.0, double h=2.0)
 {
 cout << "Constructor called." << endl;
 length = l;
 breadth = b;
 height = h;
 objectCount++;
 }
 double Volume()
 {
 return length * breadth * height;
 }
 static int getCount()
 {
 return objectCount;
 }
private:
 double length; // Length of a box
 double breadth; // Breadth of a box
 double height; // Height of a box
};
// Initialize static member of class Box
int Box::objectCount = 0;
```

```
int main(void)
{
 // Print total number of objects before creating object.
 cout << "Initial Stage Count: " << Box::getCount() << endl;
 Box Box1(3.3, 1.2, 1.5); // Declare box1
 Box Box2(8.5, 6.0, 2.0); // Declare box2
 // Print total number of objects after creating object.
 cout << "Final Stage Count: " << Box::getCount() << endl;
 return 0;
}
```

**Output:**

Initial Stage Count: 0  
Constructor called.  
Constructor called.  
Final Stage Count: 2

**Class, Constructor and Destructor****Class Constructors and destructors in C++**

In this C++ tutorial you will learn about Class Constructors and destructors in C++ viz., Constructors, What is the use of Constructor, General Syntax of Constructor, Destructors, What is the use of Destructors and General Syntax of Destructors.

**Constructors:****What is the use of Constructor**

The main use of constructors is to initialize objects. The function of initialization is automatically carried out by the use of a special member function called a constructor.

**General Syntax of Constructor**

A constructor is a special member function that takes the same name as the class name. The syntax generally is as given below:

```
{ arguments};
```

The default constructor for a class X has the form

```
X::X()
```

In the above example, the arguments are optional.

The constructor is automatically named when an object is created. A constructor is named whenever an object is defined or dynamically allocated using the "new" operator.

There are several forms in which a constructor can take its shape namely:

**Default Constructor:**

This constructor has no arguments in it. The default Constructor is also called as the no argument constructor.

```
class Exforsys
{
 private:
 int a,b;
 public:
```

```
Exforsys();
...
};

Exforsys :: Exforsys()
{
 a=0;
 b=0;
}
```

## Copy constructor:

This constructor takes one argument, also called one argument constructor. The main use of copy constructor is to initialize the objects while in creation, also used to copy an object. The copy constructor allows the programmer to create a new object from an existing one by initialization.

For example to invoke a copy constructor the programmer writes:

```
Exforsys e3(e2);
```

or

```
Exforsys e3=e2;
```

Both the above formats can be sued to invoke a copy constructor.

```
#include <iostream.h>
class Exforsys
{
private:
 int a;
public:
 Exforsys()
 { }
 Exforsys(int w)
 {
 a=w;
 }
 Exforsys(Exforsys e)
 {
 a=e.a;
 cout << " Example of Copy Constructor";
 }
 void result()
 {
 cout<< a;
 }
};
void main()
{
 Exforsys e1(50);
 Exforsys e3(e1);
 cout<< "ne3=";e3.result();
```

```
}
```

In the above the copy constructor takes one argument an object of type Exforsys which is passed by reference. The output of the above program is.

```
Enter the value of a:10
Enter the value of b:12.5
The value of c is:22.5Press any key to continue . . .
```

Some important points about constructors:

- A constructor takes the same name as the class name.
- The programmer cannot declare a constructor as virtual or static, nor can the programmer declare a constructor as const, volatile, or const volatile.
- No return type is specified for a constructor.
- The constructor must be defined in the public. The constructor must be a public member.
- Overloading of constructors is possible. This will be explained in later sections of this tutorial.

## Parameterized Constructor

C++ permits us to achieve this objects bt passing argument to the constructor function when the object are created . The constructor that can take arguments are called parametrized constructors

```
class example
{
 public:
 int health;
 example(int h)
 {
 health = h;
 }
};

example character(99);
int main()
{
 cout <<character.health;
}

class Line
{
 public:
 int getLength(void);
 Line(int len); // Parameterize constructor
 Line(const Line &obj); // copy constructor
```

```
~Line(); // destructor
};
```

## Dynamic Constructor

The constructor can also be used to allocate memory while creating objects. This will enable the system to allocate the right amount for each object when the objects are not of the same size, thus resulting in the saving of memory.

Allocation of memory to objects at the time of their construction is known as dynamic constructor of objects. The memory is allocated with the help of the new operator.

```
#include <iostream.h>
#include <conio.h>
class Account
{
 private:
 int account_no;
 int balance;
 public :
 Account(int a,int b)
 {
 account_no=a;
 balance=b;
 }
 void display()
 {
 cout<< "\nAccount number is : "<< account_no;
 cout<< "\nBalance is : " << balance;
 }
};
void main()
{
 clrscr();
 int an,bal;
 cout<< "Enter account no : ";
 cin >> an;
 cout<< "\nEnter balance : ";
 cin >> bal;
 Account *acc=new Account(an,bal); //dynamic constructor
 acc->display(); //'->' operator is used to access the method
 getch();
}
```

## Virtual Constructor

C++ being static typed (the purpose of RTTI is different) language, it is meaningless to the C++ compiler to create an object polymorphically. The compiler must be aware of the class type to create the object. In other words, what type of object to be

# TOPS Technologies

---

created is a compile time decision from C++ compiler perspective. If we make constructor virtual, compiler flags an error. In fact except inline, no other keyword is allowed in the declaration of constructor.

In practical scenarios we would need to create a derived class object in a class hierarchy based on some input. Putting in other words, object creation and object type are tightly coupled which forces modifications to extended. The objective of virtual constructor is to decouple object creation from it's type.

```
#include <iostream.h>
#include<conio.h>

class Base
{
public:
 Base() { }

 virtual // Ensures to invoke actual object destructor
 ~Base() { }

 // An interface
 virtual void DisplayAction() = 0;
};

class Derived1 : public Base
{
public:
 Derived1()
 {
 cout << "\nDerived1 created" << endl;
 }

 ~Derived1()
 {
 cout << "Derived1 destroyed" << endl;
 }

 void DisplayAction()
 {
 cout << "Action from Derived1" << endl;
 }
};
class Derived2 : public Base
{
public:
 Derived2()
```

```
{
 cout << "Derived2 created" << endl;
}

~Derived2()
{
 cout << "Derived2 destroyed" << endl;
}

void DisplayAction()
{
 cout << "Action from Derived2" << endl;
}
};
class User
{
public:
 // Creates Drived1
 User() : pBase(0)
 {
 // What if Derived2 is required? - Add an if-else ladder (see next sample)
 pBase = new Derived1();
 }
 ~User()
 {
 if(pBase)
 {
 delete pBase;
 pBase = 0;
 }
 }
 // Delegates to actual object
 void Action()
 {
 pBase->DisplayAction();
 }
private:
 Base *pBase;
};

int main()
{
 clrscr();
 User *user = new User();

 // Need Derived1 functionality only
```

```
user->Action();

delete user;
getch();
return 0;
}
```

## Out Put

```
Derived1 created
Action from Derived1
Derived1 destroyed
```

## Destructors

### What is the use of Destructors

Destructors are also special member functions used in C++ programming language. Destructors have the opposite function of a constructor. The main use of destructors is to release dynamic allocated memory. Destructors are used to free memory, release resources and to perform other clean up. Destructors are automatically named when an object is destroyed. Like constructors, destructors also take the same name as that of the class name.

### General Syntax of Destructors

```
~classname();
```

The above is the general syntax of a destructor. In the above, the symbol tilda ~ represents a destructor which precedes the name of the class.

Some important points about destructors:

- Destructors take the same name as the class name.
- Like the constructor, the destructor must also be defined in the public. The destructor must be a public member.
- The Destructor does not take any argument which means that destructors cannot be overloaded.
- No return type is specified for destructors.

```
class Exforsys
{
 private:
 ...
 public:
 Exforsys()
 { }
 ~Exforsys()
 { }
}
```

## Inheritance

### What is Inheritance?

Inheritance is the process by which new classes called derived classes are created from existing classes called base classes. The derived classes have all the features of the base class and the programmer can choose to add new features specific to the newly created derived class.

For example, a programmer can create a base class named fruit and define derived classes as mango, orange, banana, etc. Each of these derived classes, (mango, orange, banana, etc.) has all the features of the base class (fruit) with additional attributes or features specific to these newly created derived classes. Mango would have its own defined features, orange would have its own defined features, banana would have its own defined features, etc.

This concept of Inheritance leads to the concept of polymorphism.

### Types of inheritance

- Single Inheritance
- Multiple Inheritance
- Hierarchical Inheritance
- Multilevel Inheritance
- Hybrid Inheritance

### Features or Advantages of Inheritance:

#### Reusability:

Inheritance helps the code to be reused in many situations. The base class is defined and once it is compiled, it need not be reworked. Using the concept of inheritance, the programmer can create as many derived classes from the base class as needed while adding specific features to each derived class as needed.

#### Saves Time and Effort:

The above concept of reusability achieved by inheritance saves the programmer time and effort. Since the main code written can be reused in various situations as needed.

Increases Program Structure which results in greater reliability.

Polymorphism (to be discussed in detail in later sections)

General Format for implementing the concept of Inheritance:

class derived\_classname: access specifier baseclassname

For example, if the base class is exforsys and the derived class is sample it is specified as:

class sample: public exforsys

The above makes sample have access to both public and protected variables of base class exforsys. Reminder about public, private and protected access specifiers:

- If a member or variables defined in a class is private, then they are accessible by members of the same class only and cannot be accessed from outside the class.
- Public members and variables are accessible from outside the class.
- Protected access specifier is a stage between private and public. If a member functions or variables defined in a class are protected, then they cannot be accessed from outside the class but can be accessed from the derived class.

```
#include <iostream.h>
class exforsys
{
 public:
```

```
exforsys(void) { x=0; }
void f(int n1)
{
 x= n1*5;
}
void output(void) { cout << "\n" << "x=" << x; }
private:
int x;
};

class sample: public exforsys
{
public:
sample(void) { s1=0; }
void f1(int n1)
{
 s1=n1*10;
}
void output(void)
{
 exforsys::output();
 cout << "\n" << "s1=" << s1;
}
private:
int s1;
};
int main(void)
{
 sample s;
 s.f(10);
 s.f1(20);
 s.output();
 return 0;
}
```

The output of the above program is

```
x=50
s1=200Press any key to continue . . .
```

In the above example, the derived class is sample and the base class is exforsys. The derived class defined above has access to all public and private variables. Derived classes cannot have access to base class constructors and destructors. The derived class would be able to add new member functions, or variables, or new constructors or new destructors. In the above example, the derived class sample has new member function f1() added in it. The line:

```
sample s;
```

# TOPS Technologies

---

creates a derived class object named as s. When this is created, space is allocated for the data members inherited from the base class exforsys and space is additionally allocated for the data members defined in the derived class sample.

The base class constructor exforsys is used to initialize the base class data members and the derived class constructor sample is used to initialize the data members defined in derived class.

The access specifier specified in the line:

```
class sample: public exforsys
```

Public indicates that the public data members which are inherited from the base class by the derived class sample remains public in the derived class.

## Multiple Inheritance

```
#include<iostream.h>
#include<conio.h>

class student
{
protected:
 int rno,m1,m2;
public:
 void get()
 {
 cout<<"Enter the Roll no :";
 cin>>rno;
 cout<<"Enter the two marks :";
 cin>>m1>>m2;
 }
};

class sports
{
protected:
 int sm; // sm = Sports mark
public:
 void getsm()
 {
 cout<<"\nEnter the sports mark :";
 cin>>sm;
 }
};

class statement:public student,public sports
{
 int tot,avg;
public:
```

```
void display()
{
 tot=(m1+m2+sm);
 avg=tot/3;
 cout<<"\n\n\tRoll No: "<<rno<<"\n\tTotal: "<<tot;
 cout<<"\n\tAverage : "<<avg;
}
};

void main()
{
 clrscr();
 statement obj;
 obj.get();
 obj.getsm();
 obj.display();
 getch();
}
```

**Output:**

```
Enter the Roll no: 100
Enter two marks
90
80
Enter the Sports Mark: 90
Roll No: 100
Total : 260
Average: 86.66
```

**Multilevel Inheritance**

```
#include <iostream.h>
#include<conio.h>
class mm
{
protected:
 int rollno;
public:
 void get_num(int a)
 {
 rollno = a;
 }
 void put_num()
 {
 cout << "Roll Number Is:\n" << rollno << "\n";
 }
};
class marks : public mm
{
protected:
```

```
int sub1;
int sub2;
public:
 void get_marks(int x,int y)
 {
 sub1 = x;
 sub2 = y;
 }
 void put_marks(void)
 {
 cout << "Subject 1:" << sub1 << "\n";
 cout << "Subject 2:" << sub2 << "\n";
 }
};

class res : public marks
{
protected:
 float tot;
public:
 void disp(void)
 {
 tot = sub1+sub2;
 put_num();
 put_marks();
 cout << "Total:" << tot;
 }
};

int main()
{
 res std1;
 std1.get_num(5);
 std1.get_marks(10,20);
 std1.disp();
 getch();
 return 0;
}
```

**Result:**

Roll Number Is: 5

Subject 1: 10

Subject 2: 20

Total: 30

**Hierarchical Inheritance**

```
#include <iostream.h>
```

```
#include<conio.h>
class Side
{
protected:
 int l;
public:
 void set_values (int x)
 { l=x;}
};
class Square: public Side
{
public:
 int sq()
 { return (l *l); }
};
class Cube:public Side
{
public:
 int cub()
 { return (l *l*l); }
};
int main ()
{
 Square s;
 s.set_values (10);
 cout << "The square value is::" << s.sq() << endl;
 Cube c;
 c.set_values (20);
 cout << "The cube value is::" << c.cub() << endl;
 getch();
 return 0;
}
```

## **Result:**

```
The square value is:: 100
The cube value is::8000
```

## **Hybrid Inheritance**

```
#include <iostream.h>
class mm
{
protected:
 int rollno;
```

```
public:
 void get_num(int a)
 { rollno = a; }
 void put_num()
 { cout << "Roll Number Is:" << rollno << "\n"; }
};
class marks : public mm
{
protected:
 int sub1;
 int sub2;
public:
 void get_marks(int x,int y)
 {
 sub1 = x;
 sub2 = y;
 }
 void put_marks(void)
 {
 cout << "Subject 1:" << sub1 << "\n";
 cout << "Subject 2:" << sub2 << "\n";
 }
};
class extra
{
protected:
 float e;
public:
 void get_extra(float s)
 {e=s;}
 void put_extra(void)
 { cout << "Extra Score::" << e << "\n";}
};
class res : public marks, public extra{
protected:
 float tot;
public:
 void disp(void)
 {
 tot = sub1+sub2+e;
 put_num();
 put_marks();
 put_extra();
 cout << "Total:" << tot;
 }
};
```

```
int main()
{
 res std1;
 std1.get_num(10);
 std1.get_marks(10,20);
 std1.get_extra(33.12);
 std1.disp();
return 0;
}
```

## **Result:**

Roll Number Is: 10  
Subject 1: 10  
Subject 2: 20  
Extra score:33.12  
Total: 63.12

## **Polymorphism and Overloading**

### **The this pointer (C++ Only)**

The keyword this identifies a special type of pointer. Suppose that you create an object named x of class A, and class A has a nonstatic member function f(). If you call the function x.f(), the keyword this in the body of f() stores the address of x. You cannot declare the this pointer or make assignments to it.

A static member function does not have a this pointer.

The type of the this pointer for a member function of a class type X, is X\* const. If the member function is declared with the const qualifier, the type of the this pointer for that member function for class X, is const X\* const.

The this pointer is passed as a hidden argument to all nonstatic member function calls and is available as a local variable within the body of all nonstatic functions.

```
#include <iostream>
struct X {
private:
 int a;
public:
 void Set_a(int a) {
 // The 'this' pointer is used to retrieve 'xobj.a'
 // hidden by the automatic variable 'a'
 this->a = a;
 }
 void Print_a() { cout << "a = " << a << endl; }
};
int main()
```

```
X xobj;
int a = 5;
xobj.Set_a(a);
xobj.Print_a();
}
```

Poly refers many. So Polymorphism as the name suggests is a certain item appearing in different forms or ways. That is making a function or operator to act in different forms depending on the place they are present is called Polymorphism. Overloading is a kind of polymorphism.

In other words say for instance we know that +, - operate on integer data type and is used to perform arithmetic additions and subtractions. But operator overloading is one in which we define new operations to these operators and make them operate on different data types in other words overloading the existing functionality with new one. This is a very important feature of object oriented programming methodology which extended the handling of data type and operations.

## Operator Overloading

In this C++ tutorial you will learn about Operator Overloading in two Parts, In Part I of Operator Overloading you will learn about Unary Operators, Binary Operators and Operator Overloading - Unary operators.

Operator overloading is a very important feature of Object Oriented Programming. Curious to know why!!? It is because by using this facility programmer would be able to create new definitions to existing operators. In other words a single operator can take up several functions as desired by programmers depending on the argument taken by the operator by using the operator overloading facility.

After knowing about the feature of operator overloading now let us see how to define and use this concept of operator overloading in C++ programming language.

We have seen in previous sections the different types of operators. Broadly classifying operators are of two types namely:

- Unary Operators
- Binary Operators

### Unary Operators:

As the name implies, it operates on only one operand. Some unary operators are named ++ also called the Increment operator, -- also called the Decrement Operator, !, ~ are called unary minus.

### Binary Operators:

The arithmetic operators, comparison operators, and arithmetic assignment operators all this which we have seen in previous section of operators come under this category.

Both the above classification of operators can be overloaded. So let us see in detail each of this.

### Operator Overloading - Unary operators

As said before operator overloading helps the programmer to define a new functionality for the existing operator. This is done by using the keyword operator.

The general syntax for defining an operator overloading is as follows:

```
return_type classname :: operator operator_symbol(argument)
{
```

```
...
statements;
}
```

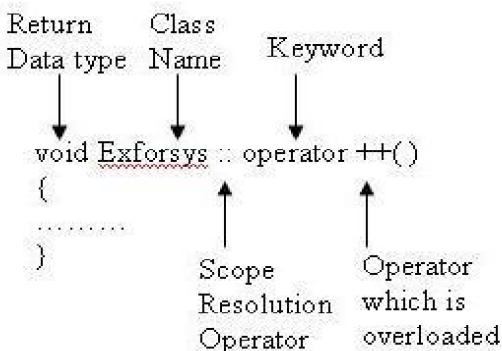
Thus the above clearly specifies that operator overloading is defined as a member function by making use of the keyword operator.

In the above:

- return\_type - is the data type returned by the function
- class name - is the name of the class
- operator - is the keyword
- operator symbol - is the symbol of the operator which is being overloaded or
- defined for new functionality
- :: - is the scope resolution operator which is used to use the function definition outside the class. The usage of this is clearly defined in our earlier section of How to define class members.

### For example

Suppose we have a class say Exforsys and if the programmer wants to define a operator overloading for unary operator say ++, the function is defined as



Inside the class Exforsys the data type that is returned by the overloaded operator is defined as

```
class Exforsys
{
private:

public:

void operator ++();
};
```

So the important steps involved in defining an operator overloading in case of unary operators are:

Inside the class the operator overloaded member function is defined with the return data type as member function or a friend function. The concept of friend function we will define in later sections. If in this case of unary operator overloading if the function is a member function then the number of arguments taken by the operator member function is none as seen in the below example. In case if the function defined for the operator overloading is a friend function which we will discuss in later section then it takes one argument.

# TOPS Technologies

---

The operator overloading is defined as member function outside the class using the scope resolution operator with the keyword operator as explained above

Now let us see how to use this overloaded operator member function in the program

```
#include <iostream.h>
class Exforsys
{
private:
 int x;
public:
 Exforsys() { x=0; } //Constructor
 void display();
 void operator ++();
};

void Exforsys :: display()
{
 cout << "nValue of x is: " << x;
}

void Exforsys :: operator ++() //Operator Overloading for operator ++ defined
{
 ++x;
}

void main()
{
 Exforsys e1,e2; //Object e1 and e2 created
 cout << "Before Increment";
 cout << "nObject e1: "; e1.display();
 cout << "nObject e2: "; e2.display();
 ++e1; //Operator overloading applied
 ++e2;
 cout << "n After Increment";
 cout << "nObject e1: "; e1.display();
 cout << "nObject e2: "; e2.display();
}
```

The output of the above program is:

```
Before Increment
Object e1:
Value of x is: 0
Object e2:
Value of x is: 0
After Increment
Object e1:
Value of x is: 1
Object e2:
Value of x is: 1Press any key to continue . . .
```

In the above example we have created 2 objects e1 and e2 of class Exforsys. The operator ++ is overloaded and the function is defined outside the class Exforsys.

When the program starts the constructor Exforsys of the class Exforsys initialize the values as zero and so when the values are displayed for the objects e1 and e2 it is displayed as zero. When the object ++e1 and ++e2 is called the operator overloading function gets applied and thus value of x gets incremented for each object separately. So now when the values are displayed for objects e1 and e2 it is incremented once each and gets printed as one for each object e1 and e2. Operator overloading is a very important aspect of object-oriented programming. Binary operators can be overloaded in a similar manner as unary operators. In this C++ tutorial, you will learn about Binary Operators Overloading, explained along with syntax and example.

## Operator Overloading - Binary Operators

Binary operators, when overloaded, are given new functionality. The function defined for binary operator overloading, as with unary operator overloading, can be member function or friend function.

The difference is in the number of arguments used by the function. In the case of binary operator overloading, when the function is a member function then the number of arguments used by the operator member function is one (see below example). When the function defined for the binary operator overloading is a friend function, then it uses two arguments.

Binary operator overloading, as in unary operator overloading, is performed using a keyword operator.

### Binary operator overloading example:

```
#include <iostream.h>
class Exforsys
{
private:
 int x;
 int y;

public:
 Exforsys() //Constructor
 { x=0; y=0; }
void getvalue() //Member Function for Inputting Values
{
 cout << "n Enter value for x: ";
 cin >> x;
 cout << "n Enter value for y: ";
 cin>> y;
}
void displayvalue() //Member Function for Outputting Values
{
 cout << "value of x is: " << x << "; value of y is: " << y;
}
 Exforsys operator +(Exforsys);
};

Exforsys Exforsys :: operator + (Exforsys e2)
```

# TOPS Technologies

```
//Binary operator overloading for + operator defined
{
 Exforsys rez; //declaring an Exforsys object to retain the final values
 int x1 = x+ e2.x;
 int y1 = y+e2.y;
 rez.x=x1;
 rez.y=y1;
 return rez;
}
void main()
{
 Exforsys e1,e2,e3; //Objects e1, e2, e3 created
 cout << "\nEnter value for Object e1:";
 e1.getvalue();
 cout << "\nEnter value for Object e2:";
 e2.getvalue();
 e3= e1+ e2; //Binary Overloaded operator used
 cout << "\nValue of e1 is: " ; e1.displayvalue();
 cout << "\nValue of e2 is: " ; e2.displayvalue();
 cout << "\nValue of e3 is: " ; e3.displayvalue();
}
```

The output of the above program is:

```
Enter value for Object e1:
Enter value for x: 10

Enter value for y: 20

Enter value for Object e2:
Enter value for x: 30

Enter value for y: 40

Value of e1 is: value of x is: 10; value of y is: 20
Value of e2 is: value of x is: 30; value of y is: 40
Value of e3 is: value of x is: 40; value of y is: 60Press any key to continue .
```

In the above example, the class Exforsys has created three objects e1, e2, e3. The values are entered for objects e1 and e2. The binary operator overloading for the operator '+' is declared as a member function inside the class Exforsys. The definition is performed outside the class Exforsys by using the scope resolution operator and the keyword operator.

The important aspect is the statement:

```
e3= e1 + e2;
```

The binary overloaded operator '+' is used. In this statement, the argument on the left side of the operator '+', e1, is the object of the class Exforsys in which the binary overloaded operator '+' is a member function. The right side of the operator '+' is e2. This is passed as an argument to the

operator '+'. Since the object e2 is passed as argument to the operator '+' inside the function defined for binary operator overloading, the values are accessed as e2.x and e2.y. This is added with e1.x and e1.y, which are accessed directly as x and y. The return value is of type class Exforsys as defined by the above example.

There are important things to consider in operator overloading with C++ programming language. Operator overloading adds new functionality to its existing operators. The programmer must add proper comments concerning the new functionality of the overloaded operator. The program will be efficient and readable only if operator overloading is used only when necessary.

- Some operators cannot be overloaded:
- scope resolution operator denoted by ::
- member access operator or the dot operator denoted by .
- the conditional operator denoted by ?:
- and pointer to member operator denoted by .\*

## Abstract Class

- An abstract class is a class that is designed to be specifically used as a base class.
- An abstract class contains at least one pure virtual function.
- You declare a pure virtual function by using a pure specifier (= 0) in the declaration of a virtual member function in the class declaration.
- You cannot use an abstract class as a parameter type, a function return type, or the type of an explicit conversion, nor can you declare an object of an abstract class.

```
#include <iostream.h>
#include<conio.h>
class MyInterface {
public:
 virtual void Display() = 0;
};

class MyClass1 : public MyInterface {
public:
 void Display() {
 cout << "MyClass1" << endl;
 }
};

class MyClass2 : public MyInterface {
public:
 void Display() {
 cout << "MyClass2" << endl;
 }
};

void main()
{
 clrscr();
 MyClass1 obj1;
 obj1.Display();
 MyClass2 obj2;
```

```
obj2.Display();
getch();
}
```

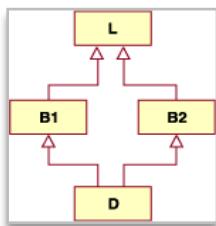
**OUTPUT:**

MyClass1  
MyClass2

## Virtual base Classes

When two or more objects are derived from a common base class, we can prevent multiple copies of the base class being present in an object derived from those objects by declaring the base class as virtual when it is being inherited. Such a base class is known as virtual base class. This can be achieved by preceding the base class' name with the word virtual.

In the following example, an object of class D has two distinct subobjects of class L, one through class B1 and another through class B2. You can use the keyword virtual in front of the base class specifiers in the *base lists* of classes B1 and B2 to indicate that only one subobject of type L, shared by class B1 and class B2, exists.



Using the keyword virtual in this example ensures that an object of class D inherits only one subobject of class L.

```
#include<iostream.h>
#include<conio.h>
class A
{
public:
 int i;
};
class B : virtual public A
{
public:
 int j;
};
class C: virtual public A
{
public:
```

```
int k;
};

class D: public B, public C
{
public:
 int sum;
};

int main()
{
 clrscr();
 D ob;
 ob.i = 10; //unambiguous since only one copy of i is inherited.
 ob.j = 20;
 ob.k = 30;
 ob.sum = ob.i + ob.j + ob.k;
 cout << "Value of i is : " << ob.i << "\n";
 cout << "Value of j is : " << ob.j << "\n";
 cout << "Value of k is :" << ob.k << "\n";
 cout << "Sum is : " << ob.sum << "\n";
 getch();
 return 0;
}
```

**Out Put:**

Value of i is: 10  
Value of j is: 20  
Value of k is: 30  
Sum is: 60

## What are Virtual Functions?

Virtual, as the name implies, is something that exists in effect but not in reality. The concept of virtual function is the same as a function, but it does not really exist although it appears in needed places in a program. The object-oriented programming language C++ implements the concept of virtual function as a simple member function, like all member functions of the class.

The functionality of virtual functions can be overridden in its derived classes. The programmer must pay attention not to confuse this concept with function overloading. Function overloading is a different concept and will be explained in later sections of this tutorial. Virtual function is a mechanism to implement the concept of polymorphism (the ability to give different meanings to one function).

### Need for Virtual Function:

The vital reason for having a virtual function is to implement a different functionality in the derived class.

For example: a Make function in a class Vehicle may have to make a Vehicle with red color. A class called FourWheeler, derived or inherited from Vehicle, may have to use a blue

background and 4 tires as wheels. For this scenario, the Make function for FourWheeler should now have a different functionality from the one at the class called Vehicle. This concept is called Virtual Function.

## Properties of Virtual Functions:

- Dynamic Binding Property:

Virtual Functions are resolved during run-time or dynamic binding. Virtual functions are also simple member functions. The main difference between a non-virtual C++ member function and a virtual member function is in the way they are both resolved. A non-virtual C++ member function is resolved during compile time or static binding. Virtual Functions are resolved during run-time or dynamic binding

- Virtual functions are member functions of a class.
- Virtual functions are declared with the keyword `virtual`, detailed in an example below.
- Virtual function takes a different functionality in the derived class.

## Virtual Function:

Virtual functions are member functions declared with the keyword `virtual`.

```
class Vehicle //This denotes the base class of C++ virtual //function
{
public:
 virtual void Make() //This denotes the C++ virtual function
 {
 cout << "Member function of Base Class Vehicle Accessed" ;
 }
};
```

After the virtual function is declared, the derived class is defined. In this derived class, the new definition of the virtual function takes place.

When the class FourWheeler is derived or inherited from Vehicle and defined by the virtual function in the class FourWheeler, it is written as:

```
#include <iostream.h>
class Vehicle //This denotes the base class of C++ virtual function
{
public:
 virtual void Make() //This denotes the C++ virtual function
 {
 cout << "Member function of Base Class Vehicle Accessed" ;
 }
};

class FourWheeler : public Vehicle
{
public:
 void Make()
 {
 cout << "Virtual Member function of Derived class FourWheeler Accessed" << endl;
 }
};

void main()
```

```
{
 Vehicle *a, *b;
 a = new Vehicle();
 a->Make();
 b = new FourWheeler();
 b->Make();
}
```

In the above example, it is evidenced that after declaring the member functions Make() as virtual inside the base class Vehicle, class FourWheeler is derived from the base class Vehicle. In this derived class, the new implementation for virtual function Make() is placed.

Output:

```
Member function of Base Class Vehicle Accessed
Virtual Member function of Derived class FourWheeler Accessed
Press any key to continue . . .
```

The programmer might be surprised to see the function call differs and the output is then printed as above. If the member function has not been declared as virtual, the base class member function is always called because linking takes place during compile time and is therefore static. In this example, the member function is declared virtual and the address is bounded only during run time, making it dynamic binding and thus the derived class member function is called. To achieve the concept of dynamic binding in C++, the compiler creates a v-table each time a virtual function is declared. This v-table contains classes and pointers to the functions from each of the objects of the derived class. This is used by the compiler whenever a virtual function is needed.

## File in C++

The C++ standard libraries provide an extensive set of input/output capabilities which we will see in subsequent chapters. This chapter will discuss very basic and most common I/O operations required for C++ programming.

C++ I/O occurs in streams, which are sequences of bytes. If bytes flow from a device like a keyboard, a disk drive, or a network connection etc. to main memory, this is called **input operation** and if bytes flow from main memory to a device like a display screen, a printer, a disk drive, or a network connection, etc, this is called **output operation**.

So far we have been using the **iostream** standard library, which provides **cin** and **cout** methods for reading from standard input and writing to standard output respectively.

This tutorial will teach you how to read and write from a file. This requires another standard C++ library called **fstream** which defines three new data types:

Data Type	Description

# TOPS Technologies

ofstream	This data type represents the output file stream and is used to create files and to write information to files.
ifstream	This data type represents the input file stream and is used to read information from files.
fstream	This data type represents the file stream generally, and has the capabilities of both ofstream and ifstream which means it can create files, write information to files, and read information from files.

## Opening a File:

A file must be opened before you can read from it or write to it. Either the **ofstream** or **fstream** object may be used to open a file for writing and ifstream object is used to open a file for reading purpose only.

Here the first argument specifies the name and location of the file to be opened and the second argument of the **open()** member function defines the mode in which the file should be opened.

Opening File: void open(const char \*filename, ios::openmode mode);

Mode Flag	Description
ios::app	Append mode. All output to that file to be appended to the end.
ios::ate	Open a file for output and move the read/write control to the end of the file.
ios::in	Open a file for reading.
ios::out	Open a file for writing.
ios::trunc	If the file already exists, its contents will be truncated before opening the file.

## Writing to a File:

While doing C++ programming, you write information to a file from your program using the stream insertion operator (`<<`) just as you use that operator to output information to the screen. The only difference is that you use an **ofstream** or **fstream** object instead of the **cout** object.

## Reading from a File:

You read information from a file into your program using the stream extraction operator (`<<`) just as you use that operator to input information from the keyboard. The only difference is that you use an **ifstream** or **fstream** object instead of the **cin** object.

## Read & Write Example:

```
#include <fstream>
#include <iostream>
```

```
int main ()
{
 char data[100];
 // open a file in write mode.
 ofstream outfile;
 outfile.open("afile.dat");
 cout << "Writing to the file" << endl;
 cout << "Enter your name: ";
 cin.getline(data, 100);
 // write inputted data into the file.
 outfile << data << endl;
 cout << "Enter your age: ";
 cin >> data;
 cin.ignore();
 // again write inputted data into the file.
 outfile << data << endl;
 // close the opened file.
 outfile.close();
 // open a file in read mode.
 ifstream infile;
 infile.open("afile.dat");
 cout << "Reading from the file" << endl;
 infile >> data;
 // write the data at the screen.
 cout << data << endl;
 // again read the data from the file and display it.
 infile >> data;
 cout << data << endl;
 // close the opened file.
 infile.close();
}
```

## Opoutput:

```
./a.out
Writing to the file
Enter your name: Zara
Enter your age: 9
Reading from the file
Zara
9
```

## File Position Pointers:

Both **istream** and **ostream** provide member functions for repositioning the file-position pointer. These member functions are **seekg** ("seek get") for istream and **seekp** ("seek put") for ostream.

# TOPS Technologies

---

The argument to seekg and seekp normally is a long integer. A second argument can be specified to indicate the seek direction. The seek direction can be **ios::beg** (the default) for positioning relative to the beginning of a stream, **ios::cur** for positioning relative to the current position in a stream or **ios::end** for positioning relative to the end of a stream.

The file-position pointer is an integer value that specifies the location in the file as a number of bytes from the file's starting location. Some examples of positioning the "get" file-position pointer are:

```
// position to the nth byte of fileObject (assumes ios::beg)
 fileObject.seekg(n);
// position n bytes forward in fileObject
 fileObject.seekg(n, ios::cur);
// position n bytes back from end of fileObject
 fileObject.seekg(n, ios::end);
// position at end of fileObject
 fileObject.seekg(0, ios::end);
```

## String in C++

**C++ provides following two types of string representations:**

1. The C-style character string.
2. The string class type introduced with Standard C++.

```
#include <iostream>
using namespace std;
int main ()
{
 char greeting[6] = {'H', 'e', 'l', 'l', 'o', '\0'};
 cout << "Greeting message: ";
 cout << greeting << endl;
 return 0;
}
```

**Output :** Greeting message: Hello

**C++ supports a wide range of functions that manipulate null-terminated strings:**

S.N.	Function & Purpose
1	<b>strcpy(s1, s2);</b> Copies string s2 into string s1.
2	<b>strcat(s1, s2);</b> Concatenates string s2 onto the end of string s1.

3	<b>strlen(s1);</b> Returns the length of string s1.
4	<b>strcmp(s1, s2);</b> Returns 0 if s1 and s2 are the same; less than 0 if s1<s2; greater than 0 if s1>s2.
5	<b>strchr(s1, ch);</b> Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of character ch in string s1.
6	<b>strstr(s1, s2);</b> Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of string s2 in string s1.

```
#include <iostream>
#include <cstring>
int main ()
{
 char str1[10] = "Hello";
 char str2[10] = "World";
 char str3[10];
 int len ;
 // copy str1 into str3
 strcpy(str3, str1);
 cout << "strcpy(str3, str1) : " << str3 << endl;
 // concatenates str1 and str2
 strcat(str1, str2);
 cout << "strcat(str1, str2): " << str1 << endl;
 // total length of str1 after concatenation
 len = strlen(str1);
 cout << "strlen(str1) : " << len << endl;
}
```

**Output:**      strcpy( str3, str1) : Hello  
                   strcat( str1, str2): HelloWorld  
                   strlen(str1) : 10

## The string Class in C++

The standard C++ library provides a string class type that supports all the operations mentioned above, additionally much more functionality. We will study this class in C++

# TOPS Technologies

---

Standard Library but for now let us check following example:

At this point you may not understand this example because so far we have not discussed Classes and Objects. So can have a look and proceed until you have understanding on Object Oriented Concepts.

```
#include <iostream>
#include <string>
int main ()
{
 string str1 = "Hello";
 string str2 = "World";
 string str3;
 int len ;
 // copy str1 into str3
 str3 = str1;
 cout << "str3 : " << str3 << endl;
 // concatenates str1 and str2
 str3 = str1 + str2;
 cout << "str1 + str2 : " << str3 << endl;
 // total length of str3 after concatenation
 len = str3.size();
 cout << "str3.size() : " << len << endl;
}
```

**Output:** str3 : Hello  
str1 + str2 : HelloWorld  
str3.size() : 10

## C++ Memory Management Operators

### Need for Memory Management operators

The concept of arrays has a block of memory reserved. The disadvantage with the concept of arrays is that the programmer must know, while programming, the size of memory to be allocated in addition to the array size remaining constant.

In programming there may be scenarios where programmers may not know the memory needed until run time. In this case, the programmer can opt to reserve as much memory as possible, assigning the maximum memory space needed to tackle this situation. This would result in wastage of unused memory spaces. Memory management operators are used to handle this situation in C++ programming language.

### What are memory management operators?

There are two types of memory management operators in C++:

- new
- delete

These two memory management operators are used for allocating and freeing memory blocks in efficient and convenient ways.

**New operator:**

The new operator in C++ is used for dynamic storage allocation. This operator can be used to create object of any type.

**General syntax of new operator in C++:**

The general syntax of new operator in C++ is as follows:

pointer variable = new datatype;

In the above statement, new is a keyword and the pointer variable is a variable of type datatype.

**For example:**

```
int *a=new int;
```

In the above example, the new operator allocates sufficient memory to hold the object of datatype int and returns a pointer to its starting point. The pointer variable a holds the address of memory space allocated.

Dynamic variables are never initialized by the compiler. Therefore, the programmer should make it a practice to first assign them a value.

The assignment can be made in either of the two ways:

```
int *a = new int;
```

```
*a = 20;
```

**Or**

```
int *a = new int(20);
```

**Delete operator:**

The delete operator in C++ is used for releasing memory space when the object is no longer needed. Once a new operator is used, it is efficient to use the corresponding delete operator for release of memory.

**General syntax of delete operator in C++:**

The general syntax of delete operator in C++ is as follows:

```
delete pointer variable;
```

In the above example, delete is a keyword and the pointer variable is the pointer that points to the objects already created in the new operator. Some of the important points the programmer must note while using memory management operators are described below:

- The programmer must take care not to free or delete a pointer variable that has already been deleted.
- Overloading of new and delete operator is possible (to be discussed in detail in later section on overloading).
- We know that sizeof operator is used for computing the size of the object. Using memory management operator, the size of the object is automatically computed.
- The programmer must take care not to free or delete pointer variables that have not been allocated using a new operator.
- Null pointer is returned by the new operator when there is insufficient memory available for allocation.

**Example:**

To understand the concept of new and delete memory management operator in C++:

```
#include <iostream.h>
void main()
{
```

```
//Allocates using new operator memory space in memory
//for storing a integer datatype
int *a= new int;
*a=100;
cout << " The Output is:a= " << *a;
//Memory Released using delete operator
delete a;
}
```

The output of the above program is



The Output is:a= 100Press any key to continue . . .

In the above program, the statement:

```
int *a= new a;
```

Holds memory space in memory for storing a integer datatype. The statement:

```
*a=100
```

This denotes that the value present in address location pointed by the pointer variable a is 100 and this value of a is printed in the output statement giving the output shown in the example above. The memory allocated by the new operator for storing the integer variable pointed by a is released using the delete operator as:

```
delete a;
```

## Templates

Independent concepts should be independently represented and should be combined only when

needed. Where this principle is violated, you either bundle unrelated concepts together or create unnecessary dependencies. Either way, you get a less flexible set of components out of which to compose systems. Templates provide a simple way to represent a wide range of general concepts and simple ways to combine them. The resulting classes and functions can match hand-written, more-specialized code in run-time and space efficiency.

Templates provide direct support for generic programming, that is, programming using types as parameters. The C++ template mechanism allows a type to be a parameter in the definition

of a class or a function. A template depends only on the properties that it actually uses from its parameter types and does not require different types used as arguments to be explicitly related. In particular, the argument types used for a template need not be from a single inheritance hierarchy.

The format for declaring function templates with type parameters is:

```
template<classidentifier>function_declaration;
template <typename identifier> function_declaration;
```

The only difference between both prototypes is the use of either the keyword

class or the keyword typename. Its use is indistinct, since both expressions have exactly the same meaning and behave exactly the same way.

For example, to create a template function that returns the greater one of two objects we could use:

```
template <class myType>
myType GetMax (myType a, myType b)
{
 return (a>b?a:b);
}
```

Here we have created a template function with myType as its template parameter. This template parameter represents a type that has not yet been specified, but that can be used in the template function as if it were a regular type. As you can see, the function template GetMax returns the greater of two parameters of this still-undefined type.

To use this function template we use the following format for the function call:

```
int x,y;
GetMax <int> (x,y);
```

When the compiler encounters this call to a template function, it uses the template to automatically generate a function replacing each appearance of myType by the type passed as the actual template parameter (int in this case) and then calls it. This process is automatically performed by the compiler and is invisible to the programmer.

## Example of Template Class

```
// class templates
#include <iostream.h>
template <class T>
class mypair {
 T a, b;
public:
 mypair (T first, T second)
 {a=first; b=second;}
 T getmax ();
};
template <class T>
T mypair<T>::getmax ()
```

```
{
 T retval;
 retval = a>b? a : b;
 return retval;
}
int main () {
 mypair <int> myobject (100, 75);
 cout << myobject.getmax();
 return 0;
}
```

**Out Put:****100****Example of Function Templates with Multiple Parameters**

```
#include <iostream.h>
template <class T, int N>
class mysequence
{
T memblock [N];
public:
void setmember (int x, T value);
T getmember (int x);
};
template <class T, int N>
void mysequence<T,N>::setmember (int x, T value)
{
memblock[x]=value;
}
template <class T, int N>
T mysequence<T,N>::getmember (int x)
{
 return memblock[x];
}
int main ()
{
 clrscr();
 mysequence <int,5> myints;
 mysequence <double,5> myfloats;
 myints.setmember (0,100);
 myfloats.setmember (3,3.1416);
 cout << myints.getmember(0) << '\n';
 cout << myfloats.getmember(3) << '\n';
 getch();
}
```

```
 return 0;
}
```

**Out Put:**

```
100
3.1416
```

**Command Line Argument in C/C++**

Command-line arguments are given after the name of a program in command-line operating systems like DOS or Linux, and are passed in to the program from the operating system. To use command line arguments in your program, you must first understand the full declaration of the main function, which previously has accepted no arguments. In fact, main can actually accept two arguments: one argument is number of command line arguments, and the other argument is a full list of all of the command line arguments.

```
#include <iostream.h>
#include<conio.h>
int main(int argc, char **argv)
{
 clrscr();
 cout << "\n\nReceived " << argc << " arguments...\n";
 for (int i=0; i<argc; i++)
 cout << "argument " << i << ": " << argv[i] << endl;
 getch();
 return 0;
}
```

# Data Structure and Algorithms

## Algorithm

- An algorithm is a sequence of steps to solve a particular problem or algorithm is an ordered set of unambiguous steps that produces a result and terminates in a finite time.
- Algorithm has the following characteristics
  - **Input:** An algorithm may or may not require input
  - **Output:** Each algorithm is expected to produce at least one result
  - **Definiteness:** Each instruction must be clear and unambiguous.
  - **Finiteness:** If the instructions of an algorithm are executed, the algorithm should terminate after finite number of steps

## HOW TO WRITE ALGORITHMS:

### Step 1: Define your algorithms input:

Many algorithms take in data to be processed, e.g. to calculate the area of rectangle input may be the rectangle height and rectangle width.

### Step 2 Define the variables:

Algorithm's variables allow you to use it for more than one place. We can define two variables for rectangle height and rectangle width as HEIGHT and WIDTH (or H & W). We should use meaningful variable name e.g. instead of using H & W use HEIGHT and WIDTH as variable name.

### Step 3 Outline the algorithm's operations:

Use input variable for computation purpose, e.g. to find area of rectangle multiply the HEIGHT and WIDTH variable and store the value in new variable (say) AREA. An algorithm's operations can take the form of multiple steps and even branch, depending on the value of the input variables.

### Step 4 Output the results of your algorithm's operations:

In case of area of rectangle output will be the value stored in variable AREA. If the input variables described a rectangle with a HEIGHT of 2 and a WIDTH of 3, the algorithm would output the value of 6.

## FLOWCHART

A flowchart is a graphical representation of an algorithm. Programmers often use it as a program-planning tool to solve a problem. It makes use of symbols which are connected among them to indicate the flow of information and processing.

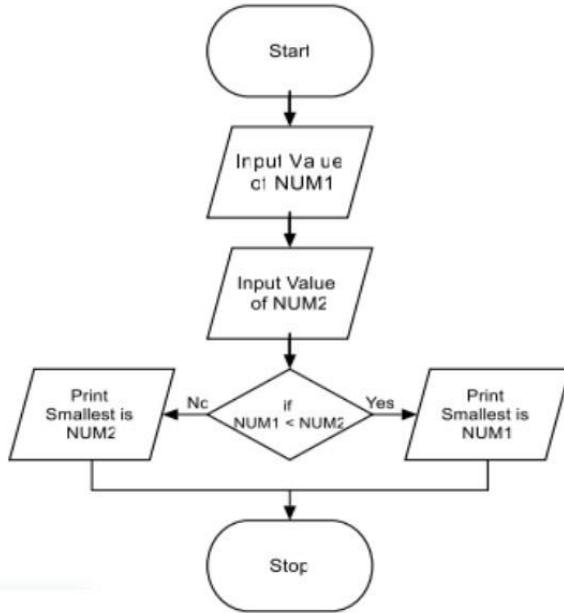
The process of drawing a flowchart for an algorithm is known as -flowcharting||.

## Algorithm And Flowchart Example

### Algorithm & Flowchart to find the smallest of two numbers

#### Algorithm

Step-1 Start  
Step-2 Input two numbers say  
NUM1,NUM2  
Step-3 IF NUM1 < NUM2 THEN  
    print smallest is NUM1  
ELSE  
    print smallest is NUM2  
ENDIF  
Step-4 Stop

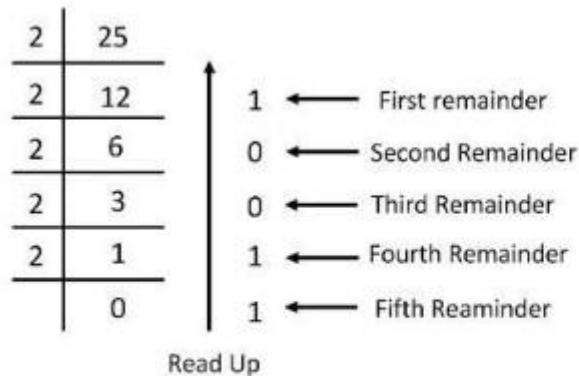


## Binary Number

- Binary Numbers are the flow of information in the form of zeros and ones used by digital computers and systems.
- The binary number system is an alternative to the decimal (10-base) number system that we use every day.
- Binary numbers are important because using them instead of the decimal system simplifies the design of computers and related technologies.
- The simplest definition of the binary number system is a system of numbering that uses only two digits—0 and 1—to represent numbers, instead of using the digits 1 through 9 plus 0 to represent numbers.

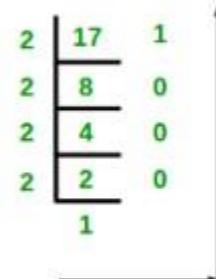
# TOPS Technologies

Conversion from Decimal to Binary



Binary Number = 11001

Decimal number : 17



Binary number: 10001

1. Store the remainder when the number is divided by 2 in an array.
2. Divide the number by 2
3. Repeat the above two steps until the number is greater than zero.
4. Print the array in reverse order now.

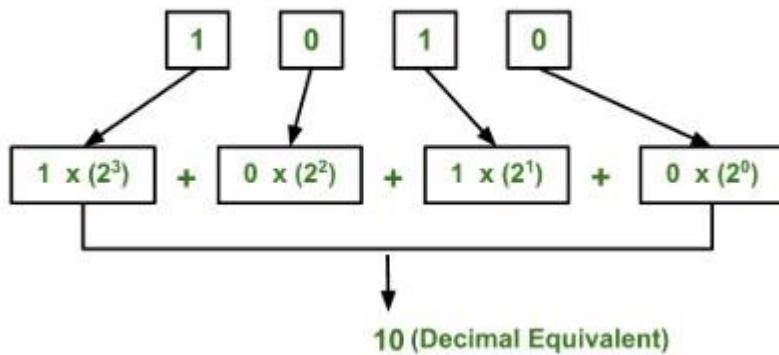
Conversion from Binary to Decimal

Computer Arithmetic

It involves:

- Addition
- Subtraction
- Multiplication
- Division

Binary number - 1010



## Negative Number Representation

Two ways by which negative numbers are represented:

1. Sign Magnitude
2. 2's complement method

### 1. Sign magnitude

It is a very simple representation of negative numbers. In sign magnitude the first bit is dedicated to represent the sign and hence it is called sign bit.

Sign bit '1' represents **negative** sign.

Sign bit '0' represents **positive** sign.

For example,

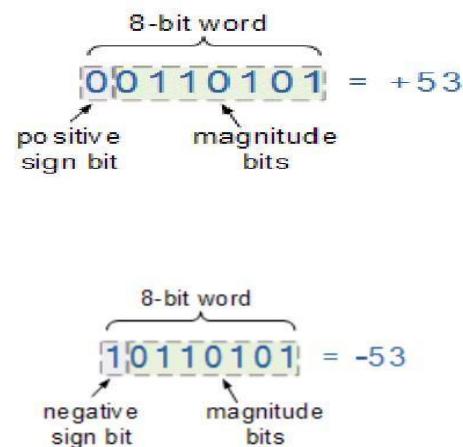
$+25 = 011001$  [Where 11001 = 25 And 0 for  $= +$ ]

$-25 = 111001$  [Where 11001 = 25 And 1 for  $= -$ ]

But there is one problem in sign magnitude and that is we have two representations of 0

$+0 = 000000$

$-0 = 100000$



### 2. 2's complement method

To represent a negative number in this form, first we need to take the 1's complement of the number represented in simple positive binary form and then add 1 to it.

For example:

$710 = 01112$

1's complement of 0111 = 1000

Adding 1 to it,  $1000 + 1 = 1001$

So,  $-710 = 10012$

## Addition

The binary addition of two bits (a and b) is defined by the table:

<u>a</u>	<u>b</u>	<u><math>a + b</math></u>
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

} carry 0  
} carry 1

When adding n-bit values, the values are added in corresponding bit-wisepairs, with each carry being added to the next most significant pair of bits. The same algorithm can be used when adding pairs of unsigned or pairs of signed values.

### 4-bit addition example

Since computers are constrained to deal with fixed-width binary values, any carry out of the most significant bit-wise pair is ignored.

4-Bit Example B:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 & 0\ 1\ 0 & \leftarrow \text{carry values} \\
 \text{value 1:} & 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 & \} \text{bit-wise pairs} \\
 + \text{value 2:} & + 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 & \\
 \text{result:} & \hline 1\ 1\ 0\ 1
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 & 1\ 1\ 1\ 0 & \leftarrow \text{carry values} \\
 \text{value 1:} & 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 & \} \text{bitwise pairs} \\
 + \text{value 2:} & + 0\ 1\ 1\ 0 & \\
 \text{result:} & \hline 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1
 \end{array}$$

↑ ignored      ↑ 4-bit result

## Validity of result:

- First consider the case where the binary values are intended to represent unsigned integers (i.e. counting numbers).
- Adding the binary values representing two unsigned integers will give the correct result (i.e. will yield the binary value representing the sum of the unsigned integer values) providing the operation does not overflow – i.e. when the addition operation is applied to the original unsigned integer values.
- The result is an unsigned integer value that is inside of the set of unsigned integer values that can be represented using the specified number of bits (i.e. the result can be represented under the fixed-width constraints imposed by the representation).

## Overflow

When the values added in above example are considered as unsigned values, then the 4-bit result does not accurately represent the sum of the unsigned values ( $11 + 6$ )!

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{value 1: } & 11_{10} & & 1110 & \leftarrow \text{carry values} \\ + \text{value 2: } & + 6_{10} & & 1011 \\ \text{result: } & 17_{10} & \longrightarrow & 0001 & \quad \text{???? } 11 + 6 = 1 \text{ ?????} \end{array}$$

In this case, the operation has resulted in overflow: the result (17) is outside the set of values that can be represented using 4-bit binary number system values (i.e. 17 is not in the set  $\{0, \dots, 15\}$ ).

The result (0001<sub>2</sub>) is correct according to the rules for performing binary addition using fixed-width values, but truncating the carry out of the most significant bit resulted in the loss of information that was important to the encoding being used. If the carry had been kept, then the 5-bit result (10001<sub>2</sub>) would have represented the unsigned integer sum correctly.

In arithmetic an overflow happens when

- The sum of two positive numbers exceeds the maximum positive value that can be represented using  $n$  bits:  $2n - 1 - 1$
- The sum of two negative numbers falls below the minimum negative value that can be represented using  $n$  bits:  $-2n - 1$

Example

**Four-bit arithmetic:**

- Sixteen possible values
- Positive overflow happens when result > 7
- Negative overflow happens when result < -8

**Eight-bit arithmetic:**

- 256 possible values
- Positive overflow happens when result > 127
- Negative overflow happens when result < -128

## **Eight Conditions for Signed-Magnitude Addition/Subtraction**

Operation	ADD Magnitudes	SUBTRACT Magnitudes		
		$A > B$	$A < B$	$A = B$
1 $(+A) + (+B)$	$+ (A + B)$			
2 $(+A) + (-B)$		$+ (A - B)$	$- (B - A)$	$+ (A - B)$
3 $(-A) + (+B)$		$- (A - B)$	$+ (B - A)$	$+ (A - B)$
4 $(-A) + (-B)$	$- (A + B)$			
5 $(+A) - (+B)$		$+ (A - B)$	$- (B - A)$	$+ (A - B)$
6 $(+A) - (-B)$	$+ (A + B)$			
7 $(-A) - (+B)$	$- (A + B)$			
8 $(-A) - (-B)$		$- (A - B)$	$+ (B - A)$	$+ (A - B)$

## Subtraction

The binary subtraction of two bits (a and b) is defined by the table:

- When subtracting n-bit values, the values are subtracted in corresponding bit-wise pairs, with each borrow rippling down from the more significant bits as needed.
- If none of the more significant bits contains a 1 to be borrowed, then 1 may be borrowed into the most significant bit.

<u>a</u>	<u>b</u>	<u><math>a - b</math></u>
0	0	0
1	0	1
1	1	0
0	1	1

borrow 0      borrow 1

# TOPS Technologies

Example

must borrow from second digit

$$\begin{array}{r} 1010 \\ -0001 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

becomes:

$$\begin{array}{r} 0 \\ 1010 \\ -0001 \\ \hline 1001 \end{array}$$

Interpretations

unsigned	signed
10	-6
-1	-7
9	7

no overflow in either case

**Example**

borrow from above most signif. bit

$$\begin{array}{r} 11010101 \\ -1111 \\ \hline 0010 \end{array}$$

Interpretations

unsigned	signed
1	1
-15	-1
2	2

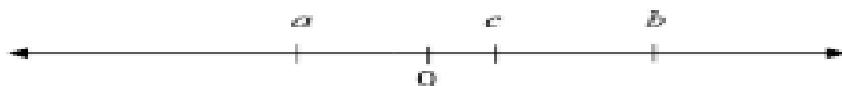
overflow in unsigned case  
no overflow in signed case

## When Overflow Occurs?

For unsigned values, a carry out of (or a borrow into) the most significant bit indicates that overflow has occurred.

For signed values, overflow has occurred when the sign of the result is impossible for the signs of the values being combined by the operation. For example, overflow has occurred if:

- Two positive values are added and the sign of the result is negative
- a negative value is subtracted from a positive value and the result is negative (a positive minus a negative is the same as a positive plus a positive, and should result in a positive value, i.e.  $a - (-b) = a + b$ )



## **Adding a positive and a negative value will never overflow.**

Reason: picture the two values on a number line as shown below. Suppose that a is a negative value, and b is a positive value. Adding the two values,  $a + b$  will result in c such that c will always lie between a and b on the number line. If a and b can be represented prior to the addition, then c can also be represented, and overflow will never occur.

## **Multiplication**

Multiplication is a slightly more complex operation than addition or subtraction.

Multiplying two n-bit values together can result in a value of up to  $2n$ -bits.

There is a reasonably simple algorithm for multiplying binary values that represent unsigned integers, but the same algorithm cannot be applied directly to values that represent signed values (this is different from addition and subtraction where the same algorithms can be applied to values that represent unsigned or signed values!).

Overflow is not an issue in n-bit unsigned multiplication, proving that  $2n$ -bits of results are kept.

### **Decimal multiplication**

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{(Carry) } 1 \\ \underline{37} \\ \times 12 \\ \hline 74 \\ 370 \\ \hline 444 \end{array}$$

What are the rules?

- Successively multiply the multiplicand by each digit of the multiplier starting at the right shifting the result left by an extra left position each time each time but the first.
- Sum all partial results

### **Binary multiplication**

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{(Carry) } 111 \\ \underline{1101} \\ \times 101 \\ \hline 1101 \\ 1101 \\ 00 \\ \hline 110100 \\ 1000001 \end{array}$$

What are the rules?

- Successively multiply the multiplicand by each digit of the multiplier

# TOPS Technologies

starting at the right shifting the result left by an extra left position each time each time but the first.

- Sum all partial results

## Binary multiplication table

X	0	1
0	0	0
1	0	1

## Multiplication Algorithm for unsigned

Number:

The following shift-and-add algorithm can be used to calculate the product of unsigned values:

```
unsigned int a;
unsigned int b;
unsigned long int sum; // need twice as many bits for result!
unsigned longint ashifted;
```

```
// calculate a * b
sum = 0;
ashifted = a;
for(i = 0 ; i < n ; i ++)
{
 if (bi == 1) { sum+= ashifted; }
 ashifted = shift_left(ashifted)// shift_left function shifts value one bit
}
// at this point, sum holds the product!
```

## Explanations

The variable ashifted represents the value of the term  $a \square 2^i$ .

Each time through the loop, if the value of bit  $i$  is 1 then the value of the  $i^{\text{th}}$  term is added (accumulated) to the variable sum, and the value of the next ( $i + 1^{\text{th}}$ ) term is calculated by shifting ashifted left by one bit (assume that during the shift operation a 0 is injected as the least

significant bit).

## Binary multiplication

$$\begin{array}{r}
 1101 \\
 \times 101 \\
 \hline
 1101 \\
 00 \\
 \hline
 110100 \\
 1000101
 \end{array}$$

Observe that the least significant bit added during each cycle remains unchanged

## Booth Multiplication Algorithm

Booth's Algorithm gives a procedure for multiplying binary integers in signed-2's complement representation.

Example  $(2) * (-4) = 0010 * 1100$

It operates on the fact that strings of 0's in the multiplier require no addition but just shifting and a string of 1's in the multiplier from bit weight  $2^k$  to weight  $2^m$  can be treated as  $2^{(k+1)}$  to  $2^m$ .

### Step1: Making the booth table:

1. From the two numbers, pick the number with the smallest difference between a series of consecutive numbers, and make it a multiplier.  
i.e., 0010 -- From 0 to 0 no change, 0 to 1 one change, 1 to 0 another change, and so there are two changes on this one  
1100 -- From 1 to 1 no change, 1 to 0 one change, 0 to 0 no change, so there is only one change on this one.

Therefore, multiplication of  $2 \times (-4)$ , where 2ten (0010two) is the multiplicand and  $(-4)$  ten (1100two) is the multiplier.

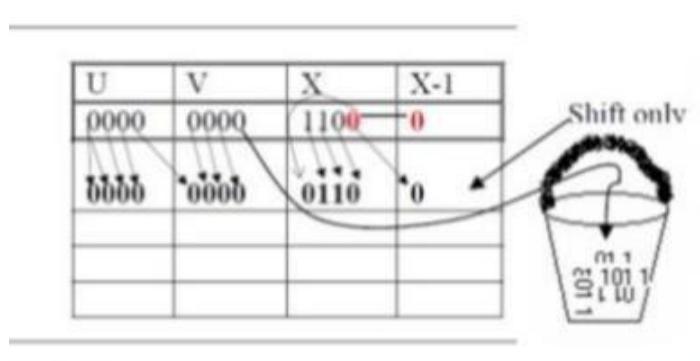
2. Let  $X = 1100$  (multiplier)  
Let  $Y = 0010$  (multiplicand)  
Take the 2's complement of Y and call it  $-Y$   
 $-Y = 1110$

U	V	X	X-1	Load the value
0000	0000	1100	0	1 <sup>st</sup> cycle
				2 <sup>nd</sup> cycle
				3 <sup>rd</sup> Cycle
				4 <sup>th</sup> Cycle

3. Load the X value in the table.
4. Load 0 for X-1 value it should be the previous first least significant bit of X
5. Load 0 in U and V rows which will have the product of X and Y at the end of operation.
6. Make four rows for each cycle; this is because we are multiplying four bits numbers.

## Step 2: Booth Algorithm

Look at the first least significant bits of the multiplier-X[], and the previous least significant bits of themultiplier -X - 1[].



- 0 0 Shift only 1 1 Shift only. 0 1 Add Y to U, and shift 1 0 Subtract Y from U, and shift or add (-Y) to U and shift
- Take U & V together and shift arithmetic right shift which preserves the sign bit of 2's complement number. Thus a positive number remains positive, and a negative number remains negative.
- Shift X circular right shift because this will prevent us from using two registers for the X value.

Repeat the same steps until the four cycles are completed.

U	V	X	X-1
0000	0000	1100	0
0000	0000	0110	0
<b>0000</b>	<b>0000</b>	<b>0011</b>	<b>0</b>

U	V	X	X-1
0000	0000	1100	0
0000	0000	0110	0
0000	0000	0011	0
1110	0000	0011	0
1111	0000	1001	1

U	V	X	X-1
0000	0000	1100	0
0000	0000	0110	0
0000	0000	0011	0
1110	0000	0011	0
1111	0000	1001	1
<b>1111</b>	<b>1000</b>	<b>1100</b>	<b>1</b>

Shift only

We have finished four cycles, so the answer is shown, in the last rows of U and V which is: 11111000

## Division

A division algorithm provides a quotient and a remainder when we divide two numbers. They are generally of two types: slow algorithm and fast algorithm. Slow division algorithms are restoring, non-restoring, non-performing restoring, SRT algorithm, and underfast comes Newton-Raphson and Goldschmidt.

Result must verify the equality

$$\text{Dividend} = \text{Multiplier} \times \text{Quotient} + \text{Remainder}$$

### Decimal division (long division)

$$\begin{array}{r}
 303 \\
 \hline
 7 | 2126 \\
 -210 \\
 \hline
 26 \\
 -21 \\
 \hline
 5
 \end{array}$$

What are the rules?

- Repeatedly try to subtract smaller multiple of divisor from dividend
- Record multiple (or zero)
- At each step, repeat with a lower power of ten
- Stop when remainder is smaller than divisor

### Binary division

# TOPS Technologies

---

$$\begin{array}{r} 011 \\ 11 \overline{)1011} \\ -11 \\ \hline 1011 \\ >\underline{-11} \\ 101 \\ >>\underline{-11} \\ 10 \end{array}$$

What are the rules?

- Repeatedly try to subtract powers of two of divisor from dividend Mark 1 for success, 0 for failure
- At each step, shift divisor one position to the right
- Stop when remainder is smaller than divisor

## Same division in decimal

$$\begin{array}{r} 2+1=3 \\ 3 \overline{)11} \\ -12 \\ \hline 11 \\ >\underline{-6} \\ 5 \\ >\underline{-3} \\ 2 \end{array}$$

What are the rules?

- Repeatedly try to subtract powers of two of divisor from dividend Mark 1 for success, 0 for failure
- At each step, shift divisor one position to the right
- Stop when remainder is smaller than divisor

## Observations

Binary division is actually simpler

- We start with a left-shifted version of divisor
- We try to subtract it from dividend
- No need to find out which multiple to subtract
- We mark 1 for success, 0 for failure
- We shift divisor one position left after every attempt

## Issues with Binary Division

The implementation of division in a computer raises several practical issues:

- For integer division there are two results: the quotient and the remainder.
- The operand sizes (number of bits) to be used in the algorithm must be considered (i.e. the sizes of the dividend, divisor, quotient and remainder).
- Overflow was not an issue in unsigned multiplication, but is a concern with division.
- As with multiplication, there are differences in the algorithms for signed vs. unsigned division.

Recall that multiplying two n-bit values can result in a 2n-bit value. Division algorithms are often designed to be symmetrical with this by specifying:

- the dividend as a 2n-bit value
- the divisor, quotient and remainder as n-bit values

## Shift-and-subtract algorithm

The algorithm is the inverse of the shift-and-add multiplication algorithm

```
unsigned int d;
// divisor
unsigned int quotient;
unsigned longint remainder;
unsigned longint dividend;
unsigned longint dshifted;

// dividend has twice the number of bits
// calculate dividend / divisor = quotient & remainder

quotient = 0;
remainder = dividend;
dshifted = shift_left_n(d); // shift divisor left n bits
for(i = n - 1 ; 0 <= i ; i --)
{
 if (remainder >= dshifted) { quotient = 1; remainder -= remainder; }
 dshifted = shift_right(dshifted)// shift_right function shifts value right one bit
}
```

# TOPS Technologies

Signed division

Easiest solution is to remember the sign of the operands and adjust the sign of the quotient and remainder accordingly

A little problem:

$5 \square 2 = 2$  and the remainder is 1

$-5 \square 2 = -2$  and the remainder is -1

The sign of the remainder must match the sign of the quotient

Floating point numbers

Used to represent real numbers

Very similar to scientific notation

$3.5 \times 10^6, 0.82 \times 10^{-5}, 75 \times 10^6, \dots$

Both decimal numbers in scientific notation and floating point numbers can be normalized:

$3.5 \times 10^6, 8.2 \times 10^{-6}, 7.5 \times 10^7, \dots$

## Normalization

Floating point numbers are usually normalized

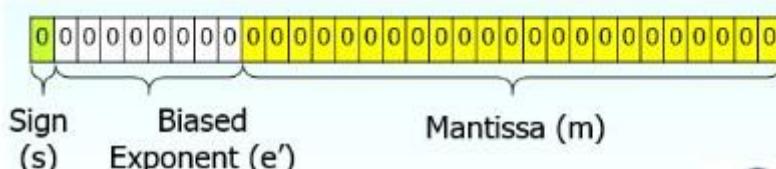
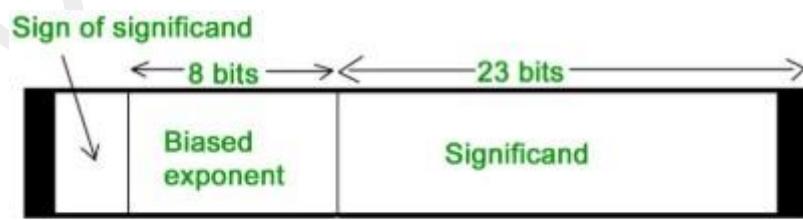
Exponent is adjusted so that leading bit (MSB) of mantissa is 1

Since it is always 1 there is no need to store it

Scientific notation where numbers are normalized to give a single digit before the decimal point like in. For example, we represent 3.625 in 32 bit format.

- Changing 3 in binary=11
- Changing 625 in binary= 101
- Writing in binary exponent form
- $3.625=11.101 \times 2^0$
- On normalizing
- $11.101 \times 2^0=1.1101 \times 2^1$

## 32 Bit Floating Point Representation of numbers



## For getting significand

Digits after decimal = 1101

Expanding to 23 bit = 11010000000000000000000000000

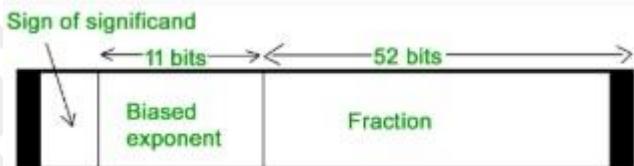
Setting sign bit

As it is a positive number, sign bit = 0

Finally we arrange according to representation:

Sign bit	exponent	significand
0	10000000	11010000000000000000000000000

## 64-bit representation floating point numbers IEEE standard



Again we follow the same procedure up to normalization. After that, we add 1023 to bias the exponent.

For example, we represent -3.625 in 64 bit format.

Changing 3 in binary = 11

Changing .625 in binary= 1010

Writing in binary exponent form

$$3.625 = 11.101 \times 2^0$$

On normalizing

$$11.101 \times 2^0 = 1.1101 \times 2^1$$

On biasing exponent  $1023 + 1 = 1024$

$$(1024)_10 = (10000000000)_2$$

So 11 bit exponent = 10000000000

52 bit significant = 110100000000 ..... making total 52 bits

Setting sign bit = 1 (number is negative)

1	10000000000	110100000000 ..... making total 52 bits by adding further 0's
---	-------------	------------------------------------------------------------------

## Designing Recursive Algorithms

A recursive algorithm is an algorithm which calls itself with "smaller (or simpler)" input values, and which obtains the result for the current input by applying simple operations to the returned value for the smaller (or simpler) input.

The process in which a function calls itself directly or indirectly is called recursion and the corresponding function is called as recursive function.

Using recursive algorithm, certain problems can be solved quite easily.

### Properties

A recursive function can go infinite like a loop. To avoid infinite running of recursive function, there are two properties that a recursive function must have:

#### Base criteria—

There must be at least one base criteria or condition, such that, when this condition is met the function stops calling itself recursively.

#### Progressive approach—

The recursive calls should progress in such a way that each time a recursive call is made it comes closer to the base criteria.

### Basic steps of recursive programs

Every recursive program follows the same basic sequence of steps:

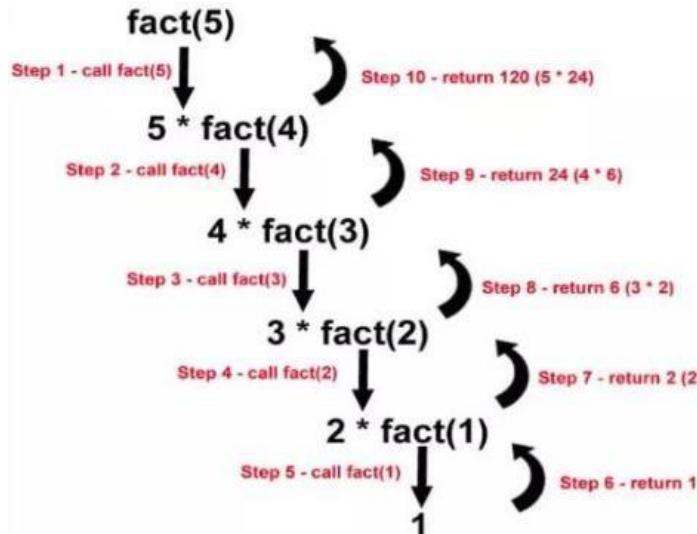
1. **Initialize the algorithm.** Recursive programs often need a seed value to start with. This is accomplished either by using a parameter passed to the function or by providing a gateway function that is nonrecursive but that sets up these seed values for the recursive calculation.
2. **Check** to see whether the current value(s) being processed match the base case. If so, process and return the value.
3. **Redefine** the answer in terms of a smaller or simpler sub-problem or sub-problems.
4. **Run** the algorithm on the sub-problem.
5. **Combine the results** in the formulation of the answer.
6. **Return** the results.

Example: Algorithm to find factorial number

```

Fact(n)
 Begin
 if n == 0 or 1 then
 Return 1;
 else
 Return n*Call Fact(n-1);
 endif
 End

```



## Data Structure

A data structure is a particular way of organizing data in a computer so that it can be used effectively.

The idea is to reduce the space and time complexities of different tasks.

For example, we can store a list of items having the same data-type using the array data structure.

### Memory Location

200 201 202 203 204 205 206							•	•	•
U	B	F	D	A	E	C	•	•	•
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	•	•	•

### Index

Some popular linear data structure:

1. Array
2. Linked List
3. Stack
4. Queue

## STACK

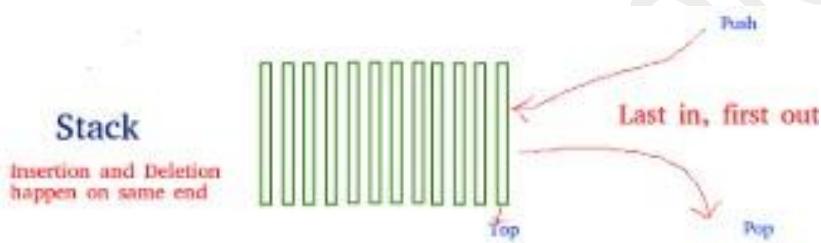
A stack is an Abstract Data Type (ADT), commonly used in most programming languages.

It is named stack as it behaves like a real-world stack, for example – a deck of cards or pile of plates, etc.



A real-world stack allows operations at one end only. For example, we can place or remove a card or plate from the top of the stack only. Likewise, Stack ADT allows all data operations at one end only. At any given time, we can only access the top element of a stack.

This feature makes it LIFO data structure. LIFO stands for Last-in-first-out. Here, the element which is placed (inserted or added) last, is accessed first.



Mainly the following basic operations are performed in the stack:

The functions associated with stack are:

**empty()** – Returns whether the stack is empty – Time Complexity : O(1)

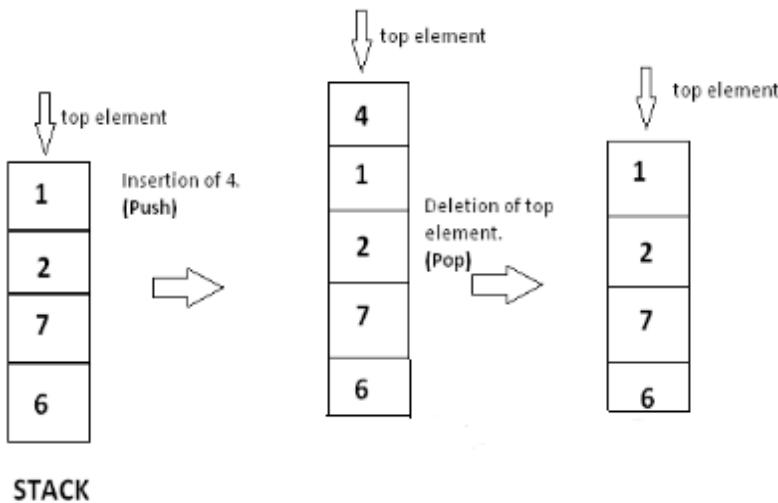
**size()** – Returns the size of the stack – Time Complexity : O(1)

**top()** – Returns a reference to the top most element of the stack – Time Complexity : O(1)

**push(g)** – Adds the element ‘g’ at the top of the stack – Time Complexity : O(1)

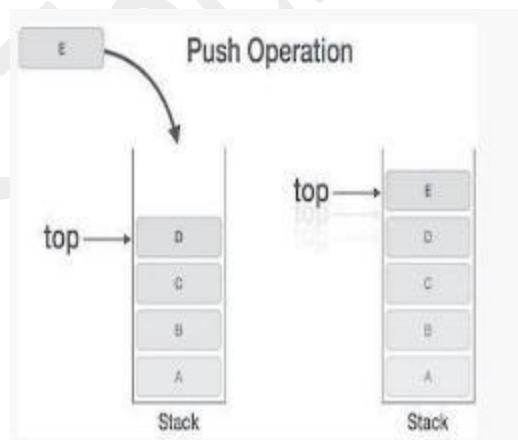
**pop()** – Deletes the top most element of the stack – Time Complexity : O(1)

# TOPS Technologies



## 1. Push Operation Algorithm:

- 1) IF TOP = MAX then  
Print -Stack is full||;  
Exit;
- 2) Otherwise  
TOP: = TOP + 1; /\*increment TOP\*/  
STACK (TOP):= ITEM;
- 3) End of IF
- 4) Exit



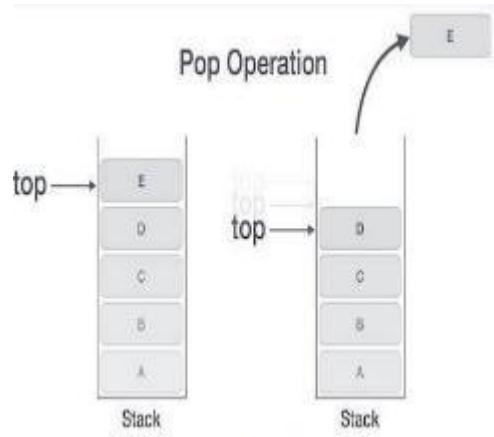
## 2. Pop Operation Algorithm:

- 1) IF TOP = 0 then  
Print -Stack is empty||;  
Exit;
- 2) Otherwise  
ITEM: =STACK (TOP);  
TOP:=TOP – 1;
- 3) End of IF

# TOPS Technologies

---

## 4) Exit



There are two ways to implement a stack:

1. Using array
2. Using linked list

# TOPS Technologies

---

Example: A program that implements a stack using array is given as follows.

```
#include <iostream>
using namespace std;
int stack[100], n=100, top=-1;
void push(int val) {
 if(top>=n-1)
 cout<<"Stack Overflow"<<endl;
 else {
 top++;
 stack[top]=val;
 }
}
void pop() {
 if(top<=-1)
 cout<<"Stack Underflow"<<endl;
 else {
 cout<<"The popped element is "<< stack[top] <<endl;
 top--;
 }
}
void display() {
 if(top>=0) {
 cout<<"Stack elements are:";
 for(int i=top; i>=0; i--)
 cout<<stack[i]<<" ";
 cout<<endl;
 } else
 cout<<"Stack is empty";
}
int main() {
 int ch, val;
 cout<<"1) Push in stack"<<endl;
 cout<<"2) Pop from stack"<<endl;
 cout<<"3) Display stack"<<endl;
 cout<<"4) Exit"<<endl;
 do {
 cout<<"Enter choice: "<<endl;
 cin>>ch;
 switch(ch) {
 case 1: {
 cout<<"Enter value to be pushed:"<<endl;
 cin>>val;
 push(val);
 break;
 }
 case 2: {
 pop();
 break;
 }
 }
 }
}
```

```
case 3: {
 display();
 break;
}
case 4: {
 cout<<"Exit"<<endl;
 break;
}
default: {
 cout<<"Invalid Choice"<<endl;
}
}
}while(ch!=4);
return 0;
}
```

## Output:

- 1) Push in stack
- 2) Pop from stack
- 3) Display stack
- 4) Exit

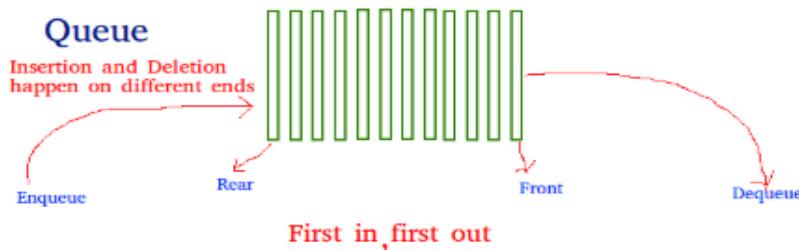
```
Enter choice: 1
Enter value to be pushed: 2
Enter choice: 1
Enter value to be pushed: 6
Enter choice: 1
Enter value to be pushed: 8
Enter choice: 1
Enter value to be pushed: 7
Enter choice: 2
The popped element is 7
Enter choice: 3
Stack elements are:8 6 2
Enter choice: 5
Invalid Choice
Enter choice: 4
Exit
```

## QUEUE

A Queue is a linear structure which follows a particular order in which the operations are performed.



- The order is First In First Out (FIFO).
- A good example of a queue is any queue of consumers for a resource where the consumer that came first is served first.
- The difference between stacks and queues is in removing. In a stack we remove the item the most recently added; in a queue, we remove the item the least recently added.



### Queue Operations

There are five operations possible on a queue:

Initialize operation

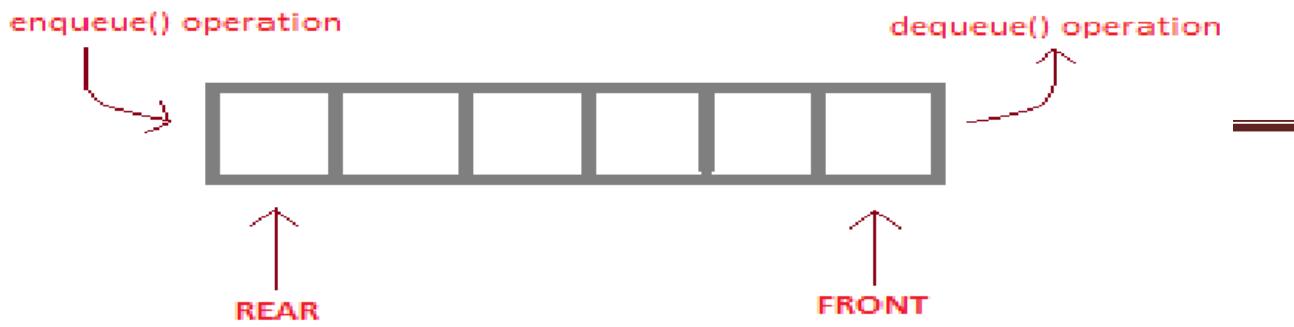
**Enqueue:** Addition or insertion operation.

**Dequeue:** Deletion operation.

**Is\_full** check.

**Is\_empty** check.

Two pointers **REAR** and **FRONT** are maintained by Queue for Enqueue and



**enqueue( )** is the operation for adding an element into Queue.

**dequeue( )** is the operation for removing an element from Queue .

## QUEUE DATA STRUCTURE

Dequeue

### **Enqueue Algorithm:**

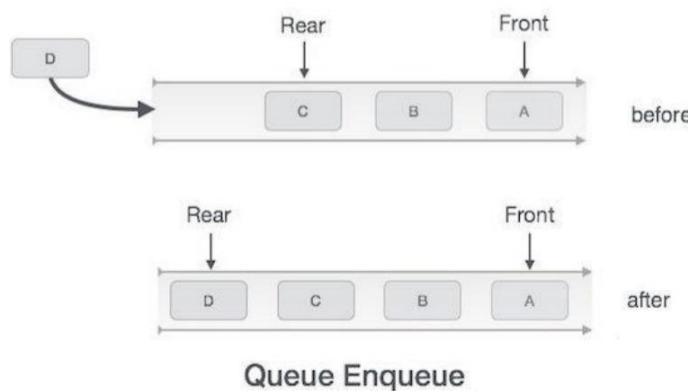
Step 1 – Check if the queue is full.

Step 2 – If the queue is full, produce overflow error and exit.

Step 3 – If the queue is not full, increment rear pointer to point the next empty space.

Step 4 – Add data element to the queue location, where the rear is pointing.

Step 5 – return success.



### **Dequeue Algorithm**

Step 1 – Check if the queue is empty.

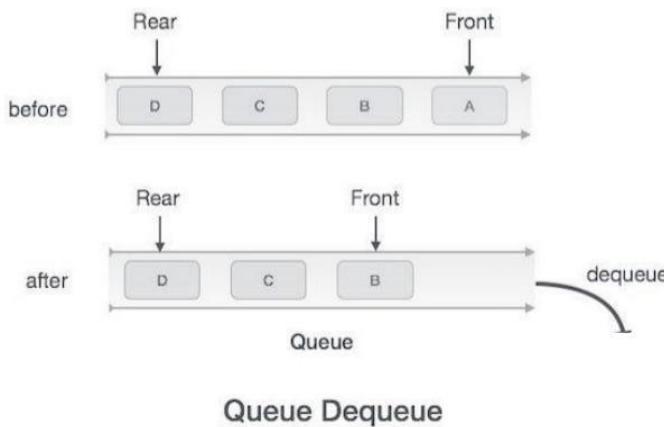
Step 2 – If the queue is empty, produce underflow error and exit.

Step 3 – If the queue is not empty, access the data where front is pointing.

# TOPS Technologies

Step 4 – Increment front pointer to point to the next available data element.

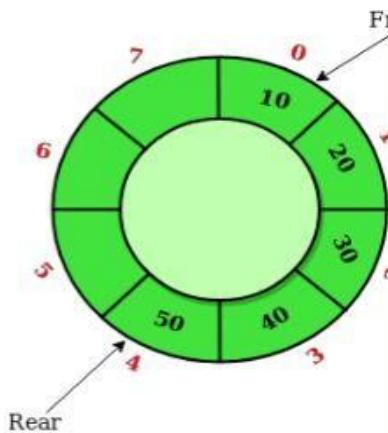
Step 5 – Return success.



## QUEUE VARIATIONS

The standard queue data structure has the following variations:

- Double-ended queue
- Circular queue



### Double-ended queue

In a standard queue, a character is inserted at the back and deleted in the front. However, in a double-ended queue, characters can be inserted and deleted from both the front and back of the queue.

### Circular Queue:

In a circular queue, vacant spaces are reutilized. While inserting elements, when you reach the end of an array and you need to insert another element, you must insert that element at the beginning (given that the first element has been deleted and the space is vacant).

# TOPS Technologies

---

Example: A program that implements the queue using an array is given as follows –

```
#include <iostream>
using namespace std;
int queue[100], n = 100, front = - 1, rear = - 1;
void Insert() {
 int val;
 if (rear == n - 1)
 cout<<"Queue Overflow"<<endl;
 else {
 if (front == - 1)
 front = 0;
 cout<<"Insert the element in queue : "<<endl;
 cin>>val;
 rear++;
 queue[rear] = val;
 }
}
void Delete() {
 if (front == - 1 || front > rear) {
 cout<<"Queue Underflow ";
 return ;
 } else {
 cout<<"Element deleted from queue is : "<< queue[front] <<endl;
 front++;
 }
}
void Display() {
 if (front == - 1)
 cout<<"Queue is empty"<<endl;
 else {
 cout<<"Queue elements are : ";
 for (int i = front; i <= rear; i++)
 cout<<queue[i]<<" ";
 cout<<endl;
 }
}
int main() {
 int ch;
 cout<<"1) Insert element to queue"<<endl;
 cout<<"2) Delete element from queue"<<endl;
 cout<<"3) Display all the elements of queue"<<endl;
 cout<<"4) Exit"<<endl;
 do {
 cout<<"Enter your choice : "<<endl;
 cin>>ch;
 switch (ch) {
```

```
case 2: Delete();
 break;
case 3: Display();
 break;
case 4: cout<<"Exit"<<endl;
 break;
default: cout<<"Invalid choice"<<endl;
}
} while(ch!=4);
return 0;
}
```

Output:

```
1) Insert element to queue
2) Delete element from queue
3) Display all the elements of queue
4) Exit
Enter your choice : 1
Insert the element in queue : 4
Enter your choice : 1
Insert the element in queue : 3
Enter your choice : 1
Insert the element in queue : 5
Enter your choice : 2
Element deleted from queue is : 4
Enter your choice : 3
Queue elements are : 3 5
Enter your choice : 7
Invalid choice
Enter your choice : 4
Exit
```

TOPS Technologies  
**Module -5**

**DBMS**

TOPS Technologies

# TOPS Technologies

DBMS stands for Data Base Management System.

DBMS = Database + Management System

Database is a collection of inter-related data and Management System is a set of programs to store and retrieve those data.

DBMS is a collection of inter-related data and set of programs to store & access those data in an easy and effective manner.

For Example, university database organizes the data about students, faculty, and admin staff etc. which helps in efficient retrieval, insertion and deletion of data from it.

## **What is the need of DBMS?**

Database systems are basically developed for large amount of data. When dealing with huge amount of data, there are two things that require optimization: **Storage of data** and **retrieval of data**.

**Storage:** According to the principles of database systems, the data is stored in such a way that it acquires lot less space as the redundant data (duplicate data) has been removed before storage.

**Fast Retrieval of data:** Along with storing the data in an optimized and systematic manner, it is also important that we retrieve the data quickly when needed. Database systems ensure that the data is retrieved as quickly as possible.

# TOPS Technologies

---

## Purpose of Database Systems

The main purpose of database systems is to manage the data. Consider a university that keeps the data of students, teachers, courses, books etc. To manage this data we need to store this data somewhere where we can add new data, delete unused data, update outdated data, retrieve data, and to perform these operations on data we need a Database management system that allows us to store the data in such a way so that all these operations can be performed on the data efficiently.

Function of DBMS:

1. Defining database schema: it must give facility for defining the database structure also specifies access rights to authorized users.
2. Manipulation of the database: The dbms must have functions like insertion of record into database updating of data, deletion of data, retrieval of data
3. Sharing of database: The DBMS must share data items for multiple users by maintaining consistency of data.
4. Protection of database: It must protect the database against unauthorized users
5. Database recovery: If for any reason the system fails DBMS must facilitate data base recovery.

Disadvantages in File Processing:

- Data redundancy and inconsistency.
- Difficult in accessing data.
- Data isolation.
- Data integrity.
- Concurrent access is not possible.
- Security Problems.

Advantages of DBMS:

1. Data Independence
2. Efficient Data Access.
3. Data Integrity and security.
4. Data administration.
5. Concurrent access and Crash recovery.
6. Reduced Application Development Time.

Applications

- Database Applications:
- Banking: all transactions
- Airlines: reservations, schedules
- Universities: registration, grades
- Sales: customers, products, purchases
- Online retailers: order tracking, customized recommendations
- Manufacturing: production, inventory, orders, supply chain

# TOPS Technologies

- Human resources: employee records, salaries, tax deductions
- A DBMS consists of 2 main pieces:

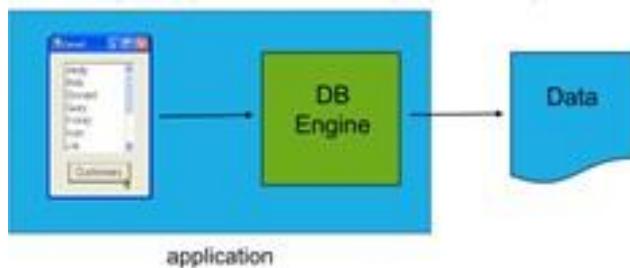
- the data
- the DB engine
- the data is typically stored in one or more files



- Two most common types are:
  - Local DBMS
  - Server DBMS

A local DBMS is where DB engine runs as part of application

- Example?
  - MS Access
  - Underlying DB engine is JET ("Joint Engine Technology")

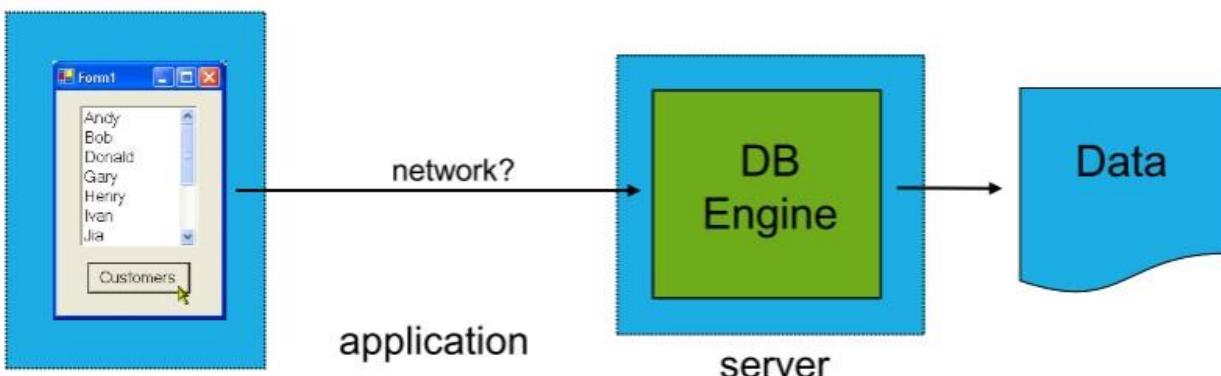


Server DBMS

A server DBMS is where DB engine runs as a separate process ◦ typically on a different machine (i.e. server)

Examples?

- MS SQL Server, Oracle, DB2, MySQL



# TOPS Technologies

## Popular DBMS Software

Here, is the list of some popular DBMS system:

- MySQL
- Microsoft Access
- Oracle
- PostgreSQL
- dBASE
- FoxPro
- SQLite
- IBM DB2
- LibreOffice Base
- MariaDB
- Microsoft SQL Server etc.

## DBMS Database Models

A Database model defines the logical design and structure of a database and defines how data will be stored, accessed and updated in a database management system. While the **Relational Model** is the most widely used database model, there are other models too:

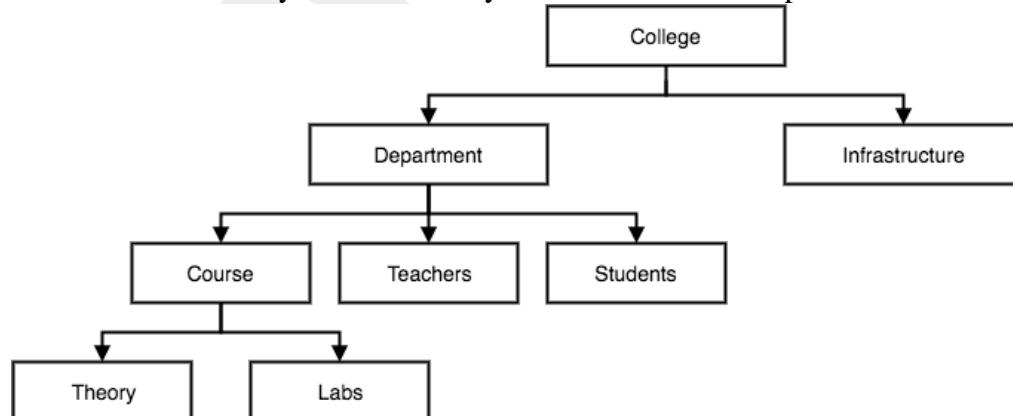
- Hierarchical Model
- Network Model
- Entity-relationship Model
- Relational Model

### Hierarchical Model

This database model organises data into a tree-like-structure, with a single root, to which all the other data is linked. The hierarchy starts from the **Root** data, and expands like a tree, adding child nodes to the parent nodes.

In this model, a child node will only have a single parent node.

This model efficiently describes many real-world relationships like index of a book, recipes etc.

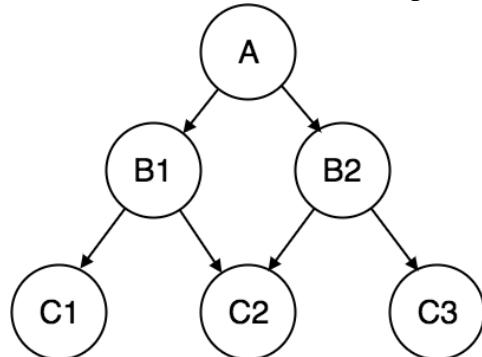


### Network Model

This is an extension of the Hierarchical model. In this model data is organised more like a graph, and are allowed to have more than one parent node.

# TOPS Technologies

In this database model data is more related as more relationships are established in this database model. Also, as the data is more related, hence accessing the data is also easier and fast. This database model was used to map many-to-many data relationships.

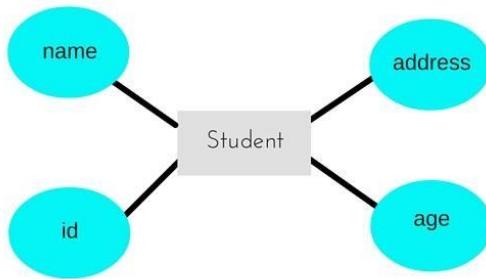


## Entity-relationship Model

In this database model, relationships are created by dividing object of interest into entity and its characteristics into attributes.

Different entities are related using relationships.

E-R Models are defined to represent the relationships into pictorial form to make it easier for different stakeholders to understand.



## Relational Model

In this model, data is organized in two-dimensional **tables** and the relationship is maintained by storing a common field.

This model was introduced by E.F Codd in 1970, and since then it has been the most widely used database model, in fact, we can say the only database model used around the world.

The basic structure of data in the relational model is tables. All the information related to a particular type is stored in rows of that table.

Hence, tables are also known as **relations** in relational model.

student_id	name	age
1	Akon	17
2	Bkon	18
3	Ckon	17
4	Dkon	18

subject_id	name	teacher
1	Java	Mr. J
2	C++	Miss C
3	C#	Mr. C Hash
4	Php	Mr. P H P

student_id	subject_id	marks
1	1	98
1	2	78
2	1	76
3	2	88

## Relational Databases

RDBMS is the basis for SQL, and for all modern database systems like MS SQL Server,

# TOPS Technologies

---

IBM DB2, Oracle, MySQL, and Microsoft Access.

Most of today's databases are relational:

- database contains 1 or more tables
- table contains 1 or more records
- record contains 1 or more fields
- fields contain the data

So why is it called "relational"?

Tables are related (joined) based on common fields

## RDBMS

Stands for "Relational Database Management System." An RDBMS is a type of DBMS designed specifically for relational databases. A relational database refers to a database that stores data in a structured format, using rows and columns.

This makes it easy to locate and access specific values within the database. It is "relational" because the values within each table are related to each other. Tables may also be related to other tables. The relational structure makes it possible to run queries across multiple tables at once.

The RDBMS refers to the that executes queries on the data, including adding, updating, and software searching for values.

An RDBMS may also provide a visual representation of the data. For example, it may display data in a tables like a spreadsheet, allowing you to view and even edit individual values in the table.

A relational model can be represented as a table of rows and columns. A relational database has following major components:

1. Table
2. Record or Tuple
3. Field or Column name or Attribute
4. Domain
5. Instance
6. Schema
7. Keys

## Entity Relational Model (E-R Model)

The E-R model can be used to describe the data involved in a real world enterprise in terms of objects and their relationships.

The entity-relationship data model perceives the real world as consisting of basic objects, called entities and relationships among these objects. It was developed to facilitate data base design by allowing specification of an enterprise schema which represents the overall logical structure of a data base.

## Main features of ER-MODEL:

- Entity relationship model is a high level conceptual model
- It allows us to describe the data involved in a real world enterprise in terms of objects and their relationships.
- It is widely used to develop an initial design of a database
- It provides a set of useful concepts that make it convenient for a developer to move from a based set of information to a detailed and description of information that can be easily implemented in a database system

# TOPS Technologies

---

- It describes data as a collection of entities, relationships and attributes

## Uses:

- These models can be used in database design. It provides useful concepts that allow us to move from an informal description to precise description.
- This model was developed to facilitate database design by allowing the specification of overall logical structure of a database.
- It is extremely useful in mapping the meanings and interactions of real world enterprises onto a conceptual schema.
- These models can be used for the conceptual design of database applications.

## Basic concepts:

The E-R data model employs three basic notions: entity sets, relationship sets and attributes.

### Entity sets:

An entity is a -thing|| or -object|| in the real world that is distinguishable from all other objects.

For example, each person in an enterprise is an entity. An entity has a set properties and the values for some set of properties may uniquely identify an entity.

BOOK is entity and its properties (called as attributes) bookcode, booktitle, price etc .

An entity set is a set of entities of the same type that share the same properties, or attributes. The set of all persons who are customers at a given bank, for example, can be defined as the entity set customer.

### Attributes:

An entity is represented by a set of attributes. Attributes are descriptive properties possessed by each member of an entity set.

Customer is an entity and its attributes are customerid, custmername, custaddress etc.

An attribute as used in the E-R model, can be characterized by the following attribute types.

#### a) Simple and composite attribute:

Simple attributes are the attributes which can't be divided into sub parts. Ex: customerid, empno.

Composite attributes are the attributes which can be divided into subparts. Ex: name consisting of first name, middle name, last name, address consisting of city, pincode, state

#### b) single-valued and multi-valued attribute:

The attribute having unique value is single –valued attribute. Ex empno, customerid, regdno, etc.

The attribute having more than one value is multi-valued attribute. Ex: phone-no,

dependent name, vehicle.

### c) Derived Attribute:

The values for this type of attribute can be derived from the values of existing attributes. Ex: age which can be derived from (currentdate-birthdate)  
experience\_in\_year can be calculated as (currentdate-joindate)

### d) NULL valued attribute:

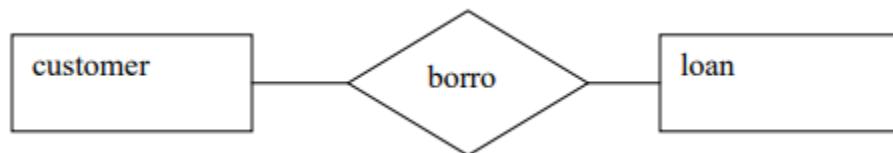
The attribute value which is unknown to user is called NULL valued attribute.

### Relationship sets:

A relationship is an association among several entities.

A relationship set is a set of relationships of the same type. Formally, it is a mathematical relation on  $n \geq 2$  entity sets. If  $E_1, E_2, \dots, E_n$  are entity sets, then a relationship set

$R$  is a subset of  $\{(e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n) | e_1 \in E_1, e_2 \in E_2, \dots, e_n \in E_n\}$  where  $(e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n)$  is a relationship.



Consider the two entity sets customer and loan. We define the relationship set borrow to denote the association between customers and the bank loans that the customers have.

### Mapping Cardinalities:

Mapping cardinalities or cardinality ratios, express the number of entities to which another entity can be associated via a relationship set.

Mapping cardinalities are most useful in describing binary relationship sets, although they can contribute to the description of relationship sets that involve more than two entity sets.

For a binary relationship set  $R$  between entity sets  $A$  and  $B$ , the mapping cardinalities must be one of the following:

#### One to one:

An entity in  $A$  is associated with at most one entity in  $B$ , and an entity in  $B$  is associated with at most one entity in  $A$ .

Eg: relationship between college and principal

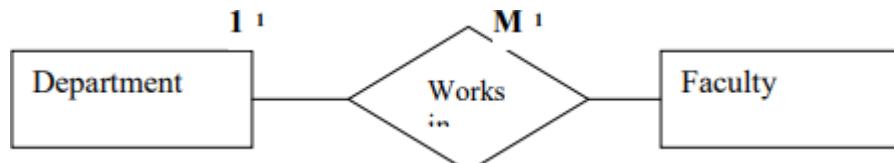


# TOPS Technologies

## One to many:

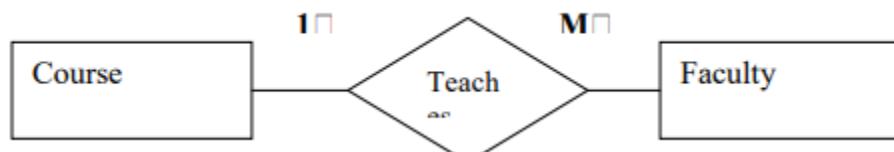
An entity in A is associated with any number of entities in B. An entity in B is associated with at the most one entity in A.

Eg: Relationship between department and faculty



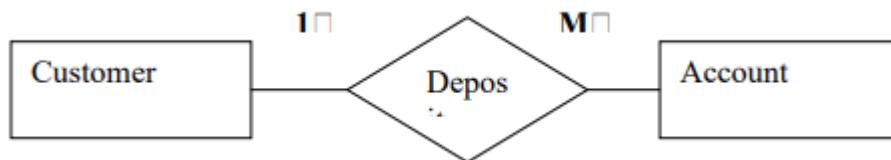
## Many to one:

An entity in A is associated with at most one entity in B. An entity in B is associated with any number in A.



## Many-to-many:

Entities in A and B are associated with any number of entities from each other.



## Participation constraints:

The participation constraints specify whether the existence of any entity depends on its being related to another entity via the relationship.

There are two types of participation constraints

1. **Total Participation:** When all the entities from an entity set participate in a relationship type is called total participation. For example, the participation of the entity set student on the relationship set must \_opts‘ is said to be total because every student enrolled must opt for a course.
2. **Partial:** When it is not necessary for all the entities from an entity set to participate in a relationship type, it is called partial participation. For example, the participation of the entity set student in \_represents‘ is partial, since not every student in a class is a class representative.
3. **Weak Entity:** Entity types that do not contain any key attribute, and hence cannot be identified independently are called weak entity types. A weak entity can be identified by uniquely only by considering some of its attributes in conjunction with the primary key attribute of another entity, which is called the identifying owner entity.

Generally a partial key is attached to a weak entity type that is used for unique identification of weak entities related to a particular owner type. The following restrictions must hold:

- The owner entity set and the weak entity set must participate in one to

# TOPS Technologies

many relationship set. This relationship set is called the identifying relationship set of the weak entity set.

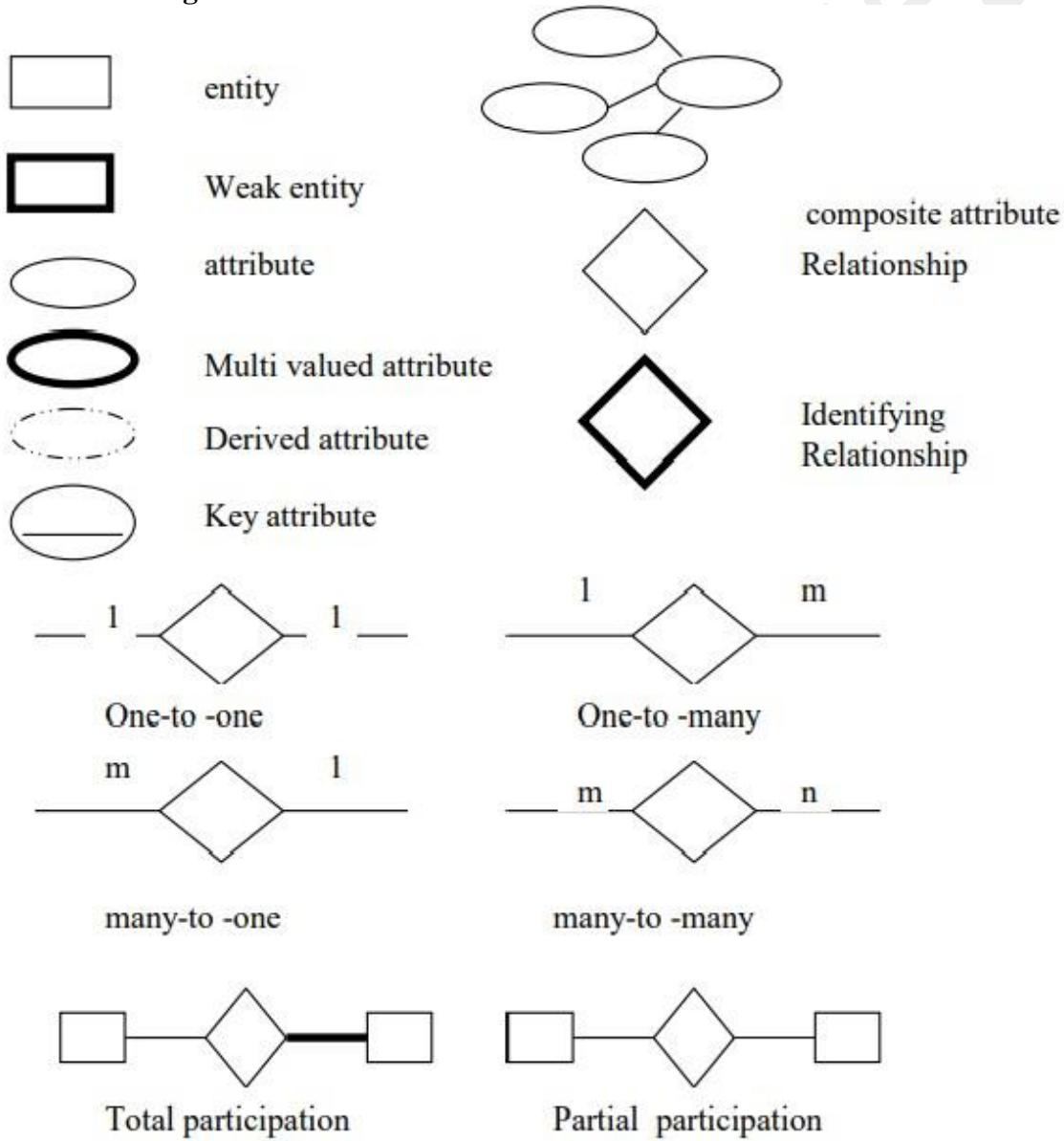
- The weak entity set must have total participation in the identifying relationship.

For example, A company may store the information of dependents (Parents, Children, Spouse) of an Employee. But the dependents don't have existence without the employee. So Dependent will be weak entity type and Employee will be Identifying Entity type for Dependent.

## ER-DIAGRAM:

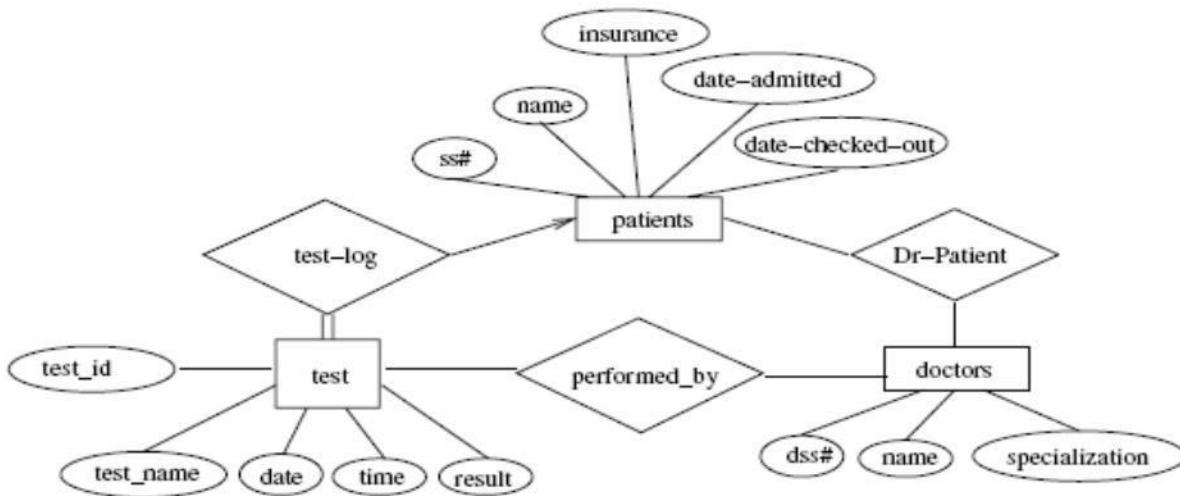
The overall logical structure of a database using ER-model graphically with the help of an ER-diagram.

### Symbols use ER- diagram:



# TOPS Technologies

## ER diagram example: For a Hospital



## Algebra

Relational Algebra is procedural query language, which takes Relation as input and generate relation as output. Relational algebra mainly provides theoretical foundation for relational databases and SQL.

## Unary Relational Operations

SELECT (symbol:  $\sigma$ )  
PROJECT (symbol:  $\pi$ )  
RENAME (symbol:  $\circ$ )

## Relational Algebra Operations from Set Theory

UNION ( $\cup$ )  
INTERSECTION ( $\cap$ ),  
DIFFERENCE ( $-$ )  
CARTESIAN PRODUCT ( $\times$ )

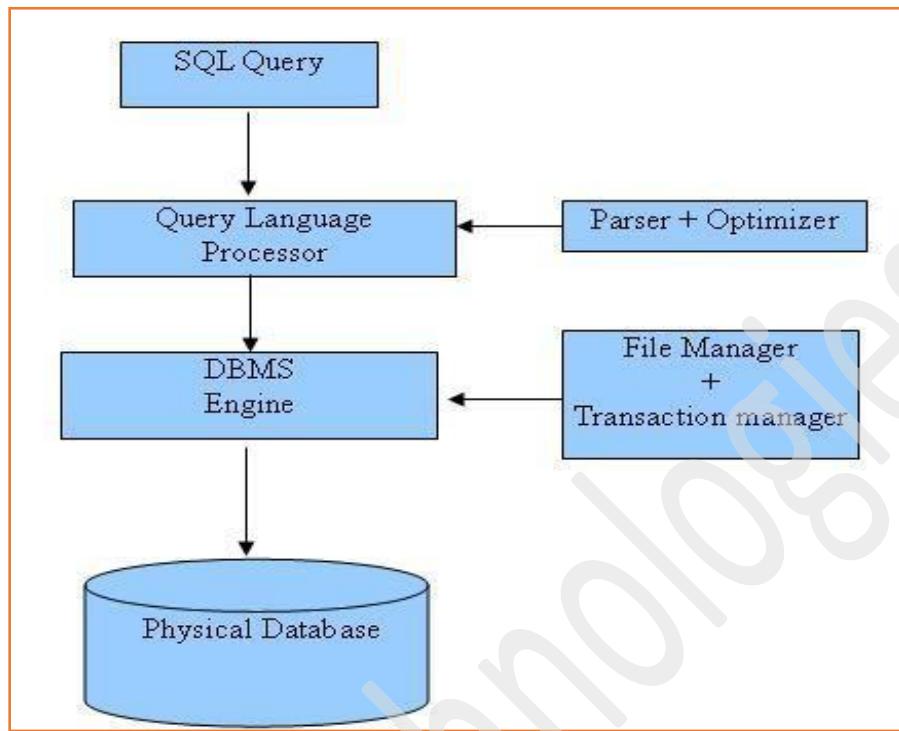
## Binary Relational Operations

JOIN  
DIVISION

## Database and Structure Query Language

### Objectives

-The large majority of today's business applications revolve around relational databases and the SQL programming language (Structured Query Language). Few businesses could function without these technologies...||



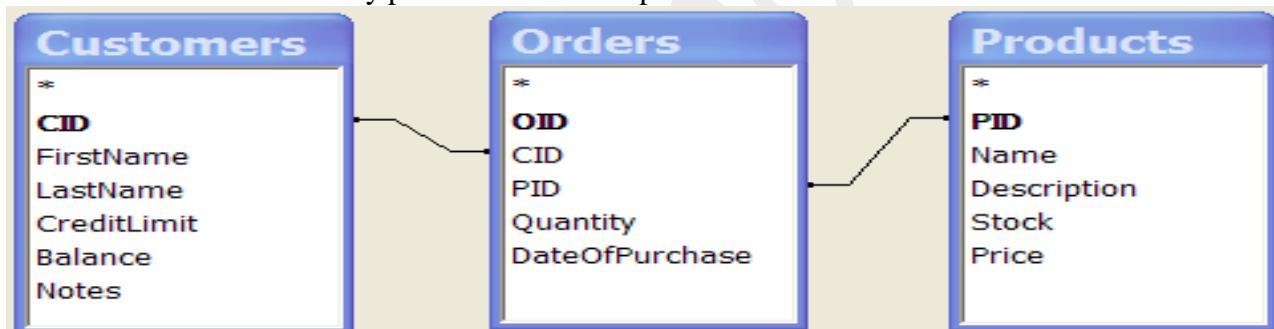
# TOPS Technologies

## Relational Databases

- RDBMS stands for **Relational Database Management System**. RDBMS is the basis for SQL, and for all modern database systems like MS SQL Server, IBM DB2, Oracle, MySQL, and Microsoft Access.
- A Relational database management system (RDBMS) is a database management system (DBMS) that is based on the relational model as introduced by E. F. Codd.
- Most of today's databases are relational:
  - database contains 1 or more *tables*
  - table contains 1 or more *records*
  - record contains 1 or more *fields*
  - fields contain the data
- So why is it called "relational"?
  - tables are related (*joined*) based on common fields

## Example

- Here's a simple **database schema** for tracking sales
  - 3 tables, related by primary keys (CID, OID, PID)
  - primary keys (in **boldface**) are unique record identifiers
  - Customer may place order for one product at a time...



## Customers...

- Here's some data for the Customers table
  - Ignore last row, it's a MS Access mechanism for adding rows...

Customers : Table						
	CID	FirstName	LastName	CreditLimit	Balance	Notes
▶	1	Jim	Bag	\$1,000.00	\$0.00	works at the gym
	3	Kathie	O'Dahl	\$9,999.99	\$0.00	a friend with a special name!
	5	Bryan	Lore	\$1,000.00	\$900.00	a brother-in-law
	6	Amy	Lore	\$1,000.00	\$100.00	a sister-in-law
	14	Bill	Gates	\$2,000,000,000.00	\$89,992.00	
	116	Jane	Doe	\$1,000.00	\$420.00	
	666	Bad	Guy	\$1,000,000.00	\$235,000.00	a very bad guy...
*	0			\$0.00	\$0.00	

# TOPS Technologies

## Products...

- Here's some data for the Products table

	PID	Name	Description	Stock	Price
▶	1	Flying Squirrels	yes, they really do fly!	3	\$899.99
	2	Cats		100	\$19.99
	3	Dogs	we only carry dalmations	20	\$79.03
	4	Ants		50000	\$0.09
	5	Birds		1000	\$4.95
	6	Elephants		10	\$389.95
	7	Red Fire Ants		10000	\$0.49
	8	Racoons		25	\$2.25
*	0			0	\$0.00

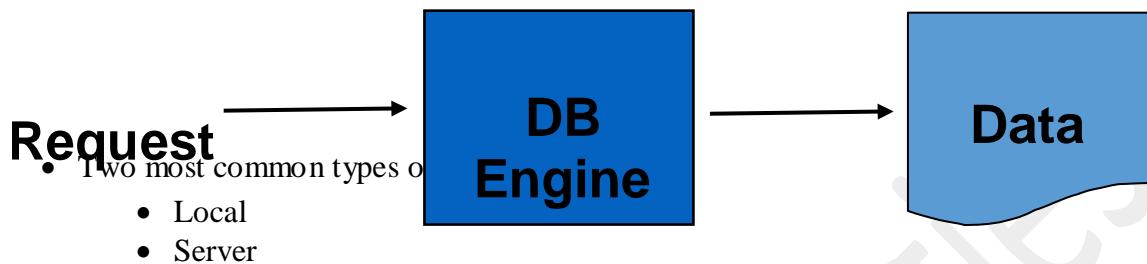
## Orders...

- Here's some data for the Orders table
  - How do you read this?
  - e.g. order #9906 states Kathie O'Dahl purchased 600 Ants
  - Must join tables together to figure that out...

	OID	CID	PID	Quantity	DateOfPurchase
▶	9906	3	4	600	Wednesday, June 28, 2000
	12351	116	4	100	Tuesday, January 01, 2002
	22209	1	2	2	Thursday, January 03, 2002
	22210	1	2	1	Friday, June 28, 2002
	33410	1	3	1	Tuesday, October 01, 2002
*	0	0	0	0	

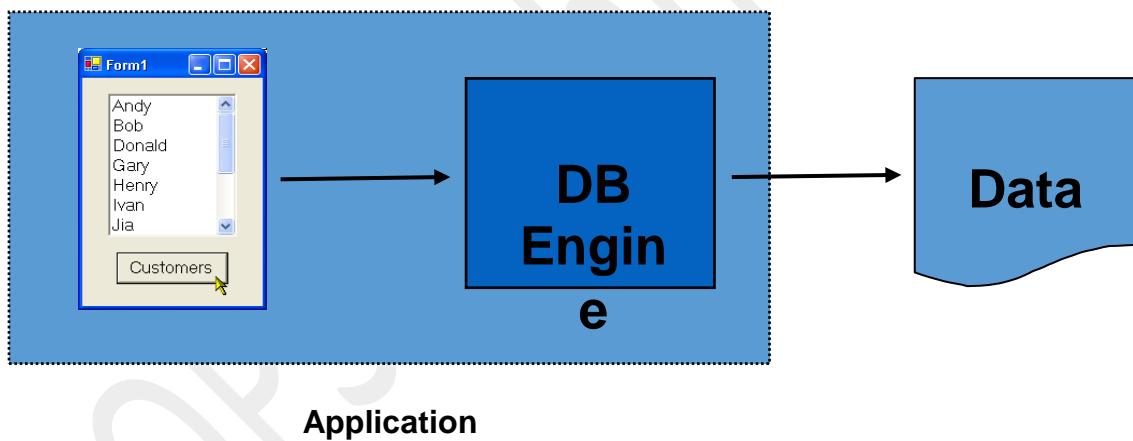
## Database Management Systems

- A DBMS consists of 2 main pieces:
  - the data
  - the DB engine
  - the data is typically stored in one or more files



## Local DBMS

- A local DBMS is where DB engine runs as part of application
- Example?
  - MS Access
  - underlying DB engine is JET ("Joint Engine Technology")

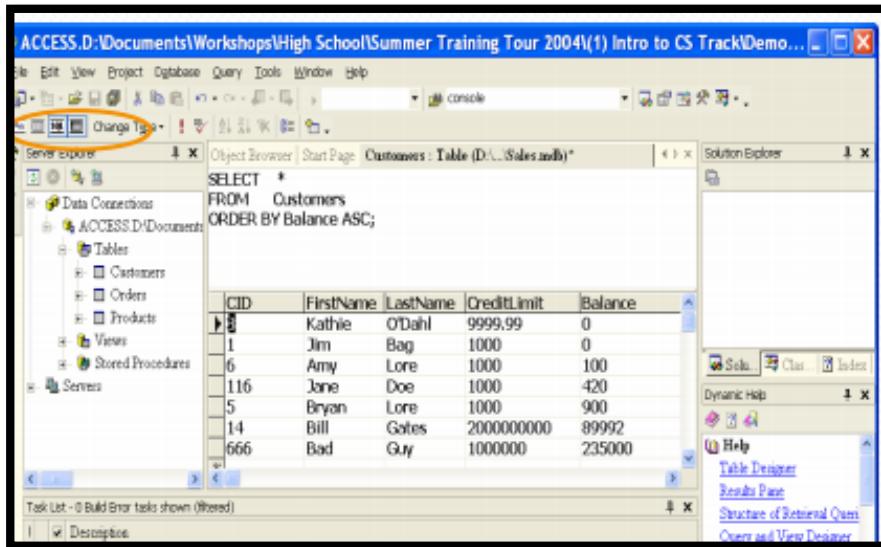
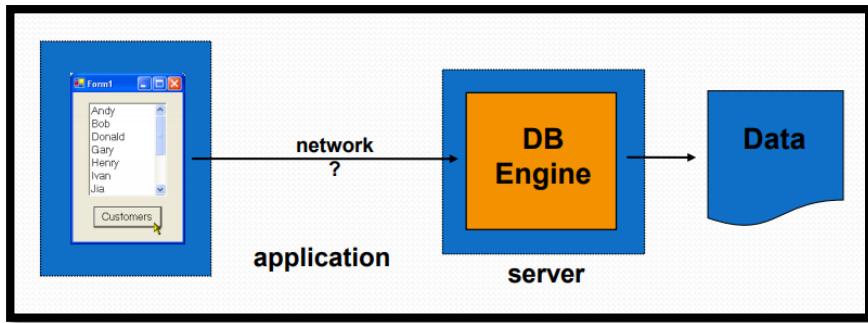


# TOPS Technologies

---

## Server DBMS

- A server DBMS is where DB engine runs as a separate process
  - typically on a different machine (i.e. server)
- Examples?
  - MS SQL Server, Oracle, DB2, MySQL



- SQL is a language of database, it includes database creation, deletion, fetching rows and modifying rows etc.
- SQL is an **ANSI (American National Standards Institute)** standard but there are many different versions of the SQL language.
- SQL is the standard programming language of relational DBs
- SQL is a standard computer language for accessing and manipulating databases.

# TOPS Technologies

---

- SQL is a great example of a **declarative** programming language
  - You declare what you want, DB engine figures out how...

## What is SQL?

- SQL is Structured Query Language, which is a computer language for storing, manipulating and retrieving data stored in relational database.
- SQL is the standard language for Relation Database System. All relational database management systems like MySQL, MS Access, and Oracle, Sybase, Informix, postgres and SQL Server use SQL as standard database language.
- Also, they are using different dialects, such as:
  - MS SQL Server using T-SQL, ANSI SQL
  - Oracle using PL/SQL,
  - MS Access version of SQL is called JET SQL (native format) etc.

## Why SQL?

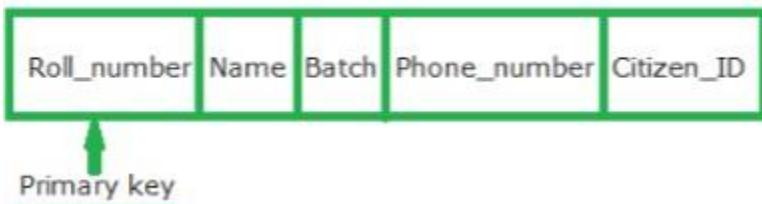
- Allows users to access data in relational database management systems.
- Allows users to describe the data.
- Allows users to define the data in database and manipulate that data.
- Allows to embed within other languages using SQL modules, libraries & pre-compilers.
- Allows users to create and drop databases and tables.
- Allows users to create view, stored procedure, functions in a database.
- Allows users to set permissions on tables, procedures, and views
- SQL stands for Structured Query Language
- SQL allows you to access a database
- SQL is an ANSI standard computer language
- SQL can execute queries against a database
- SQL can retrieve data from a database
- SQL can insert new records in a database
- SQL can delete records from a database
- SQL can update records in a database
- SQL is easy to learn
- SQL is written in the form of *queries*
- *action* queries insert, update & delete data
- *select* queries retrieve data from DB

## Keys:

- **Primary Key:**
  - A primary key is a column of table which uniquely identifies each tuple (row) in that table.
  - Primary key enforces integrity constraints to the table.
  - Only one primary key is allowed to use in a table.
  - The primary key does not accept any duplicate and NULL values.
  - The primary key value in a table changes very rarely so it is chosen with care where the changes can occur in a seldom manner.
  - A primary key of one table can be referenced by foreign key of another table.

# TOPS Technologies

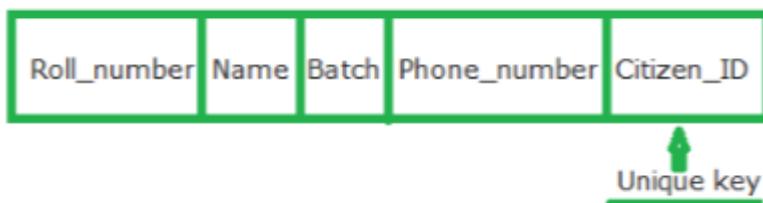
Table : Student



- **Unique Key:**

- Unique key constraints also identifies an individual table uniquely in a relation or table.
- A table can have more than one unique key unlike primary key.
- Unique key constraints can accept only one NULL value for column.
- Unique constraints are also referenced by the foreign key of another table.
- It can be used when someone wants to enforce unique constraints on a column and a group of columns which is not a primary key.

Table : Student



- **Foreign Key:**

- When, "one" table's primary key field is added to a related "many" table in order to create the common field which relates the two tables, it is called a foreign key in the "many" table.
- In the example given below, salary of an employee is stored in salary table. Relation is established via Employee\_ID\_Ref column in "Employee" table which refers Employee\_ID field in Employee table of "Jhon" is stored in "Salary" table. But his employee infoFor example, salary hon", his "employee id" is stored with each salary record.

Table : Employee	
Employee ID	Employee Name
1	Jhon
2	Alex
3	James
4	Roy
5	Kay

Table : Salary			
Employee ID_Ref	Year	Month	Salary
1	2012	April	30000
1	2012	May	31000
1	2012	June	32000
2	2012	April	40000
2	2012	May	41000
2	2012	June	42000

## Database Normalization

The basic objective of normalization is to reduce redundancy which means that information is to be stored only once. Storing information several times leads to wastage of storage space and increase in the total size of the data stored. Relations are normalized so that

## TOPS Technologies

---

when relations in a database are to be altered during the life time of the database, we do not lose information or introduce inconsistencies. The type of alterations normally needed for relations are:

- o Insertion of new data values to a relation. This should be possible without being forced to

# TOPS Technologies

---

leave blank fields for some attributes.

- Deletion of a tuple, namely, a row of a relation. This should be possible without losing vital information unknowingly.
- Updating or changing a value of an attribute in a tuple. This should be possible without exhaustively searching all the tuples in the relation.

## Functional Dependency

The functional dependency is a relationship that exists between two attributes. It typically exists between the primary key and non-key attribute within a table.

For example:

$$X \rightarrow Y$$

The left side of FD is known as a determinant, the right side of the production is known as a dependent.

### For example:

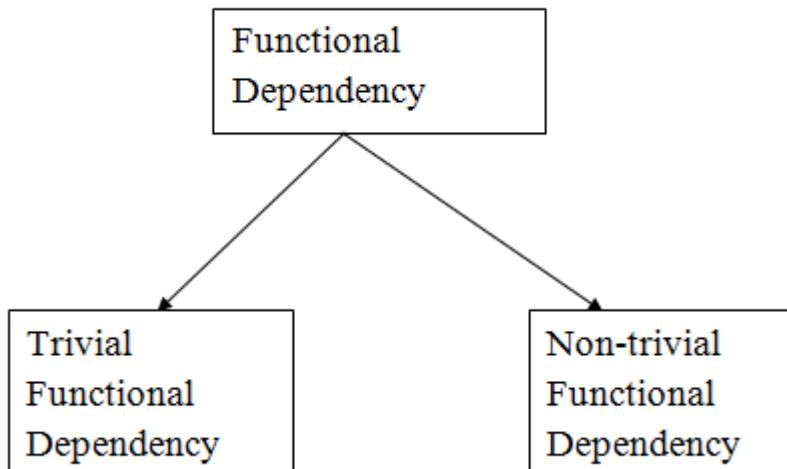
Assume we have an employee table with attributes: Emp\_Id, Emp\_Name, Emp\_Address.

Here Emp\_Id attribute can uniquely identify the Emp\_Name attribute of employee table because if we know the Emp\_Id, we can tell that employee name associated with it.

Functional dependency can be written as:

1.  $\text{Emp\_Id} \rightarrow \text{Emp\_Name}$

### Types of Functional dependency



#### 1. Trivial functional dependency

- $A \rightarrow B$  has trivial functional dependency if B is a subset of A.
- The following dependencies are also trivial like:  $A \rightarrow A$ ,  $B \rightarrow B$

### Example:

1. Consider a table with two columns Employee\_Id and Employee\_Name.
2.  $\{\text{Employee\_id}, \text{Employee\_Name}\} \rightarrow \text{Employee\_Id}$  is a trivial functional dependency as
3. Employee\_Id is a subset of  $\{\text{Employee\_id}, \text{Employee\_Name}\}$ .
4. Also,  $\text{Employee\_Id} \rightarrow \text{Employee\_Id}$  and  $\text{Employee\_Name} \rightarrow \text{Employee\_Name}$  are trivial dependencies too.

#### 2. Non-trivial functional dependency

# TOPS Technologies

---

- $A \rightarrow B$  has a non-trivial functional dependency if  $B$  is not a subset of  $A$ .
- When  $A \cap B$  is NULL, then  $A \rightarrow B$  is called as complete non-trivial.

**Example:**

1.  $ID \rightarrow Name$ ,
2.  $Name \rightarrow DOB$

## Inference Rule (IR):

- The Armstrong's axioms are the basic inference rule.
- Armstrong's axioms are used to conclude functional dependencies on a relational database.
- The inference rule is a type of assertion. It can apply to a set of FD(functional dependency) to derive other FD.
- Using the inference rule, we can derive additional functional dependency from the initial set.

The Functional dependency has 6 types of inference rule:

### 1. Reflexive Rule (IR<sub>1</sub>)

In the reflexive rule, if  $Y$  is a subset of  $X$ , then  $X$  determines  $Y$ .

If  $X \supseteq Y$  then  $X \rightarrow Y$

**Example:**

$$X = \{a, b, c, d, e\}$$

$$Y = \{a, b, c\}$$

### 2. Augmentation Rule (IR<sub>2</sub>)

The augmentation is also called as a partial dependency. In augmentation, if  $X$  determines  $Y$ , then  $XZ$  determines  $YZ$  for any  $Z$ .

If  $X \rightarrow Y$  then  $XZ \rightarrow YZ$

**Example:**

For R(ABCD), if  $A \rightarrow B$  then  $AC \rightarrow BC$

### 3. Transitive Rule (IR<sub>3</sub>)

In the transitive rule, if  $X$  determines  $Y$  and  $Y$  determine  $Z$ , then  $X$  must also determine  $Z$ .

If  $X \rightarrow Y$  and  $Y \rightarrow Z$  then  $X \rightarrow Z$

### 4. Union Rule (IR<sub>4</sub>)

Union rule says, if  $X$  determines  $Y$  and  $X$  determines  $Z$ , then  $X$  must also determine  $Y$  and  $Z$ .

If  $X \rightarrow Y$  and  $X \rightarrow Z$  then  $X \rightarrow YZ$

**Proof:**

# TOPS Technologies

---

1.  $X \rightarrow Y$  (given)
2.  $X \rightarrow Z$  (given)
3.  $X \rightarrow XY$  (using IR<sub>2</sub> on 1 by augmentation with X. Where XX = X)
4.  $XY \rightarrow YZ$  (using IR<sub>2</sub> on 2 by augmentation with Y)
5.  $X \rightarrow YZ$  (using IR<sub>3</sub> on 3 and 4)

## 5. Decomposition Rule (IR<sub>5</sub>)

Decomposition rule is also known as project rule. It is the reverse of union rule.

This Rule says, if X determines Y and Z, then X determines Y and X determines Z separately.

1. If  $X \rightarrow YZ$  then  $X \rightarrow Y$  and  $X \rightarrow Z$

**Proof:**

2.  $X \rightarrow YZ$  (given)
2.  $YZ \rightarrow Y$  (using IR<sub>1</sub> Rule)
3.  $X \rightarrow Y$  (using IR<sub>3</sub> on 1 and 2)

## 5. Pseudo transitive Rule (IR<sub>6</sub>)

In Pseudo transitive Rule, if X determines Y and YZ determines W, then XZ determines W.

If  $X \rightarrow Y$  and  $YZ \rightarrow W$  then  $XZ \rightarrow W$

**Proof:**

1.  $X \rightarrow Y$  (given)
2.  $WY \rightarrow Z$  (given)
3.  $WX \rightarrow WY$  (using IR<sub>2</sub> on 1 by augmenting with W)
4.  $WX \rightarrow Z$  (using IR<sub>3</sub> on 3 and 2)

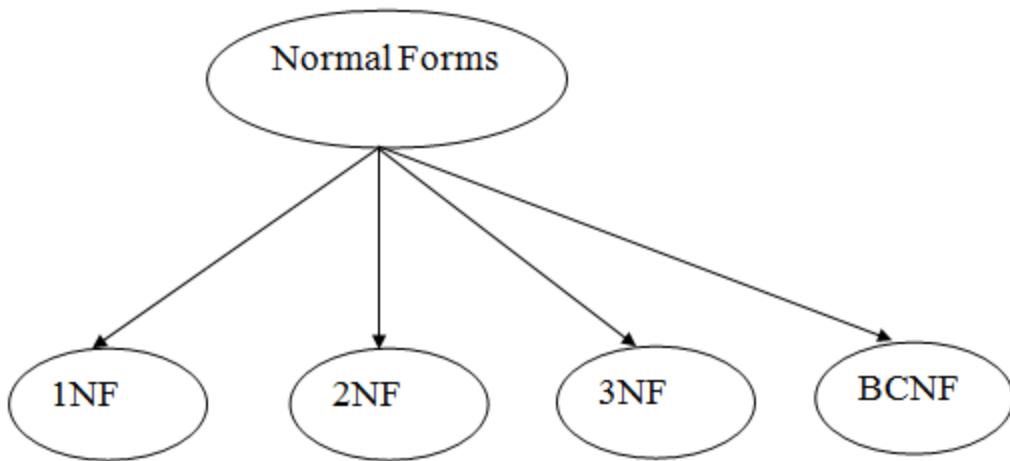
## PROPERTIES OF NORMALIZED RELATIONS:

Ideal relations after normalization should have the following properties so that the problems mentioned above do not occur for relations in the (ideal) normalized form:

1. No data value should be duplicated in different rows unnecessarily.
2. A value must be specified (and required) for every attribute in a row.
3. Each relation should be self-contained. In other words, if a row from a relation is deleted, important information should not be accidentally lost.
4. When a new row is added to a relation, other relations in the database should not be affected.
5. A value of an attribute in a tuple may be changed independent of other tuples in the relation and other relations.

# TOPS Technologies

Most Commonly used normal forms:



1. First normal form(1NF)
2. Second normal form(2NF)
3. Third normal form(3NF)
4. Boyce & Codd normal form (BCNF)

Normal Form	Description
<u>1NF</u>	A relation is in 1NF if it contains an atomic value.
<u>2NF</u>	A relation will be in 2NF if it is in 1NF and all non-key attributes are fully functional dependent on the primary key.
<u>3NF</u>	A relation will be in 3NF if it is in 2NF and no transition dependency exists.
<u>4NF</u>	A relation will be in 4NF if it is in Boyce Codd normal form and has no multi-valued dependency.
<u>5NF</u>	A relation is in 5NF if it is in 4NF and not contains any join dependency and joining should be lossless.

## First Normal Form (1NF)

- A relation will be 1NF if it contains an atomic value.
- It states that an attribute of a table cannot hold multiple values. It must hold only single-valued attribute.
- First normal form disallows the multi-valued attribute, composite attribute, and their combinations.

**Example:** Relation EMPLOYEE is not in 1NF because of multi-valued attribute EMP\_PHONE.

**EMPLOYEE table:**

EMP_ID	EMP_NAME	EMP_PHONE	EMP_STATE
14	John	7272826385, 9064738238	UP
20	Harry	8574783832	Bihar
12	Sam	7390372389, 8589830302	Punjab

The decomposition of the EMPLOYEE table into 1NF has been shown below:

EMP_ID	EMP_NAME	EMP_PHONE	EMP_STATE
14	John	7272826385	UP
14	John	9064738238	UP
20	Harry	8574783832	Bihar
12	Sam	7390372389	Punjab
12	Sam	8589830302	Punjab

## SECOND NORMAL FORM (2NF):

- In the 2NF, relational must be in 1NF.
- In the second normal form, all non-key attributes are fully functional dependent on the primary key

# TOPS Technologies

**Example:** Let's assume, a school can store the data of teachers and the subjects they teach. In a school, a teacher can teach more than one subject.

## TEACHER table

TEACHER_ID	SUBJECT	TEACHER AGE
25	Chemistry	30
25	Biology	30
47	English	35
83	Math	38
83	Computer	38

In the given table, non-prime attribute TEACHER AGE is dependent on TEACHER\_ID which is a proper subset of a candidate key. That's why it violates the rule for 2NF.

To convert the given table into 2NF, we decompose it into two tables:

## TEACHER\_DETAIL table:

TEACHER_ID	TEACHER AGE
25	30
47	35
83	38

## TEACHER SUBJECT table:

TEACHER_ID	SUBJECT
25	Chemistry
25	Biology

# TOPS Technologies

47	English
83	Math
83	Computer

## Third Normal Form (3NF)

- A relation will be in 3NF if it is in 2NF and not contain any transitive partial dependency.
- 3NF is used to reduce the data duplication. It is also used to achieve the data integrity.
- If there is no transitive dependency for non-prime attributes, then the relation must be in third normal form.

A relation is in third normal form if it holds atleast one of the following conditions for every non-trivial function dependency  $X \rightarrow Y$ .

1. X is a super key.
2. Y is a prime attribute, i.e., each element of Y is part of some candidate key.

### Example:

#### EMPLOYEE\_DETAIL table:

EMP_ID	EMP_NAME	EMP_ZIP	EMP_STATE	EMP_CITY
222	Harry	201010	UP	Noida
333	Stephan	02228	US	Boston
444	Lan	60007	US	Chicago
555	Katharine	06389	UK	Norwich
666	John	462007	MP	Bhopal

#### Super key in the table above:

1. {EMP\_ID}, {EMP\_ID, EMP\_NAME}, {EMP\_ID, EMP\_NAME, EMP\_ZIP}....so on

# TOPS Technologies

**Candidate key:** {EMP\_ID}

**Non-prime attributes:** In the given table, all attributes except EMP\_ID are non-prime.

Here, EMP\_STATE & EMP\_CITY dependent on EMP\_ZIP and EMP\_ZIP dependent on EMP\_ID. The non-prime attributes (EMP\_STATE, EMP\_CITY) transitively dependent on super key(EMP\_ID). It violates the rule of third normal form.

That's why we need to move the EMP\_CITY and EMP\_STATE to the new <EMPLOYEE\_ZIP> table, with EMP\_ZIP as a Primary key.

**EMPLOYEE table:**

EMP_ID	EMP_NAME	EMP_ZIP
222	Harry	201010
333	Stephan	02228
444	Lan	60007
555	Katharine	06389
666	John	462007

**EMPLOYEE\_ZIP table:**

EMP_ZIP	EMP_STATE	EMP_CITY
201010	UP	Noida
02228	US	Boston
60007	US	Chicago
06389	UK	Norwich
462007	MP	Bhopal

## Boyce Codd normal form (BCNF)

- BCNF is the advance version of 3NF. It is stricter than 3NF.

# TOPS Technologies

- A table is in BCNF if every functional dependency  $X \rightarrow Y$ , X is the super key of the table.
- For BCNF, the table should be in 3NF, and for every FD, LHS is super key.

**Example:** Let's assume there is a company where employees work in more than one department.

**EMPLOYEE table:**

EMP_ID	EMP_COUNTRY	EMP_DEPT	DEPT_TYPE	EMP_DEPT_NO
264	India	Designing	D394	283
264	India	Testing	D394	300
364	UK	Stores	D283	232
364	UK	Developing	D283	549

**In the above table Functional dependencies are as follows:**

1.  $\text{EMP\_ID} \rightarrow \text{EMP\_COUNTRY}$
2.  $\text{EMP\_DEPT} \rightarrow \{\text{DEPT\_TYPE}, \text{EMP\_DEPT\_NO}\}$

**Candidate key: {EMP-ID, EMP-DEPT}**

The table is not in BCNF because neither EMP\_DEPT nor EMP\_ID alone are keys.

To convert the given table into BCNF, we decompose it into three tables:

**EMP\_COUNTRY table:**

EMP_ID	EMP_COUNTRY
264	India
264	India

**EMP\_DEPT table:**

EMP_DEPT	DEPT_TYPE	EMP_DEPT_NO
Designing	D394	283

# TOPS Technologies

Testing	D394	300
Stores	D283	232
Developing	D283	549

## **EMP\_DEPT\_MAPPING table:**

EMP_ID	EMP_DEPT
D394	283
D394	300
D283	232
D283	549

## **Functional dependencies:**

1.  $\text{EMP\_ID} \rightarrow \text{EMP\_COUNTRY}$
2.  $\text{EMP\_DEPT} \rightarrow \{\text{DEPT\_TYPE}, \text{EMP\_DEPT\_NO}\}$

## **Candidate keys:**

**For the first table:** EMP\_ID

**For the second table:** EMP\_DEPT

**For the third table:** {EMP\_ID, EMP\_DEPT}

Now, this is in BCNF because left side part of both the functional dependencies is a key.

## **Fourth normal form (4NF)**

- o A relation will be in 4NF if it is in Boyce Codd normal form and has no multi-valued dependency.
- o For a dependency  $A \rightarrow B$ , if for a single value of A, multiple values of B exists, then the relation will be a multi-valued dependency.

Example:

## **STUDENT**

STU_ID	COURSE	HOBBY
--------	--------	-------

# TOPS Technologies

21	Computer	Dancing
21	Math	Singing
34	Chemistry	Dancing
74	Biology	Cricket
59	Physics	Hockey

The given STUDENT table is in 3NF, but the COURSE and HOBBY are two independent entity. Hence, there is no relationship between COURSE and HOBBY.

In the STUDENT relation, a student with STU\_ID, **21** contains two courses, **Computer** and **Math** and two hobbies, **Dancing** and **Singing**. So there is a Multi-valued dependency on STU\_ID, which leads to unnecessary repetition of data.

The given STUDENT table is in 3NF, but the COURSE and HOBBY are two independent entity. Hence, there is no relationship between COURSE and HOBBY.

In the STUDENT relation, a student with STU\_ID, **21** contains two courses, **Computer** and **Math** and two hobbies, **Dancing** and **Singing**. So there is a Multi-valued dependency on STU\_ID, which leads to unnecessary repetition of data.

So to make the above table into 4NF, we can decompose it into two tables:

## **STUDENT\_COURSE**

STU_ID	COURSE
21	Computer
21	Math
34	Chemistry
74	Biology
59	Physics

# TOPS Technologies

---

## **STUDENT\_HOBBY**

STU_ID	HOBBY
21	Dancing
21	Singing
34	Dancing
74	Cricket
59	Hockey

## **Fifth normal form (5NF)**

- A relation is in 5NF if it is in 4NF and not contains any join dependency and joining should be lossless.
- 5NF is satisfied when all the tables are broken into as many tables as possible in order to avoid redundancy.
- 5NF is also known as Project-join normal form (PJ/NF).

Example

SUBJECT	LECTURER	SEMESTER
Computer	Anshika	Semester 1
Computer	John	Semester 1
Math	John	Semester 1
Math	Akash	Semester 2
Chemistry	Praveen	Semester 1

In the above table, John takes both Computer and Math class for Semester 1 but he doesn't take Math class for Semester 2. In this case, combination of all these fields required to identify a valid data.

Suppose we add a new Semester as Semester 3 but do not know about the subject and who will be taking that subject so we leave Lecturer and Subject as NULL. But all three columns together acts as a primary key, so we can't leave other two columns blank.

# TOPS Technologies

So to make the above table into 5NF, we can decompose it into three relations P1, P2 & P3:

**P1**

SEMESTER	SUBJECT
Semester 1	Computer
Semester 1	Math
Semester 1	Chemistry
Semester 2	Math

**P2**

SUBJECT	LECTURER
Computer	Anshika
Computer	John
Math	John
Math	Akash
Chemistry	Praveen

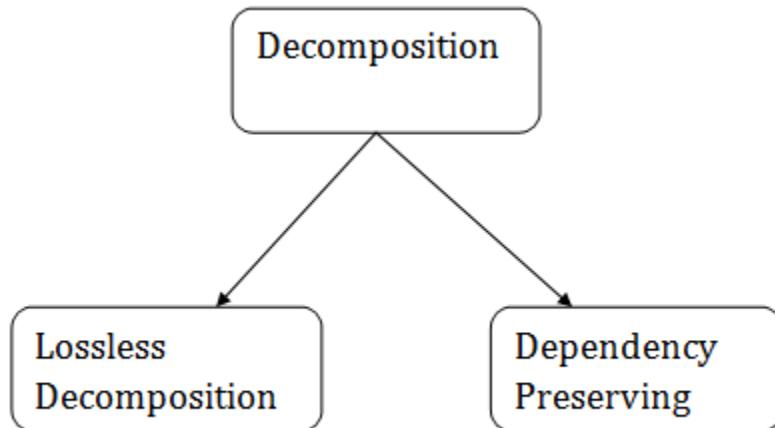
**P3**

SEMSTER	LECTURER
Semester 1	Anshika
Semester 1	John
Semester 1	John
Semester 2	Akash
Semester 1	Praveen

## Relational Decomposition

- When a relation in the relational model is not in appropriate normal form then the decomposition of a relation is done.
- In a database, it breaks the table into multiple tables.
- If the relation has no proper decomposition, then it may lead to problems like loss of information.
- Decomposition is used to eliminate some of the problems of bad design like anomalies, inconsistencies, and redundancy.

## Types of Decomposition



## Lossless Decomposition

- If the information is not lost from the relation that is decomposed, then the decomposition will be lossless.
- The lossless decomposition guarantees that the join of relations will result in the same relation as it was decomposed.
- The relation is said to be lossless decomposition if natural joins of all the decomposition give the original relation.

**Example:**

**EMPLOYEE\_DEPARTMENT table:**

EMP_ID	EMP_NAME	EMP_AGE	EMP_CITY	DEPT_ID	DEPT_NAME
22	Denim	28	Mumbai	827	Sales
33	Alina	25	Delhi	438	Marketing

# TOPS Technologies

---

46	Stephan	30	Bangalore	869	Finance
52	Katherine	36	Mumbai	575	Production
60	Jack	40	Noida	678	Testing

The above relation is decomposed into two relations EMPLOYEE and DEPARTMENT

## **EMPLOYEE table:**

EMP_ID	EMP_NAME	EMP_AGE	EMP_CITY
22	Denim	28	Mumbai
33	Alina	25	Delhi
46	Stephan	30	Bangalore
52	Katherine	36	Mumbai
60	Jack	40	Noida

## **DEPARTMENT table**

DEPT_ID	EMP_ID	DEPT_NAME
827	22	Sales
438	33	Marketing
869	46	Finance
575	52	Production
678	60	Testing

Now, when these two relations are joined on the common column "EMP\_ID", then the resultant relation will look like:

## Employee ✈ Department

EMP_ID	EMP_NAME	EMP_AGE	EMP_CITY	DEPT_ID	DEPT_NAME
22	Denim	28	Mumbai	827	Sales
33	Alina	25	Delhi	438	Marketing
46	Stephan	30	Bangalore	869	Finance
52	Katherine	36	Mumbai	575	Production
60	Jack	40	Noida	678	Testing

Hence, the decomposition is Lossless join decomposition.

### Dependency Preserving

- It is an important constraint of the database.
- In the dependency preservation, at least one decomposed table must satisfy every dependency.
- If a relation R is decomposed into relation R1 and R2, then the dependencies of R either must be a part of R1 or R2 or must be derivable from the combination of functional dependencies of R1 and R2.
- For example, suppose there is a relation R (A, B, C, D) with functional dependency set (A->BC). The relational R is decomposed into R1(ABC) and R2(AD) which is dependency preserving because FD A->BC is a part of relation R1(ABC).

### Multivalued Dependency

- Multivalued dependency occurs when two attributes in a table are independent of each other but, both depend on a third attribute.
- A multivalued dependency consists of at least two attributes that are dependent on a third attribute that's why it always requires at least three attributes.

**Example:** Suppose there is a bike manufacturer company which produces two colors(white and black) of each model every year.

BIKE_MODEL	MANUF_YEAR	COLOR

# TOPS Technologies

M2011	2008	White
M2001	2008	Black
M3001	2013	White
M3001	2013	Black
M4006	2017	White
M4006	2017	Black

Here columns COLOR and MANUF\_YEAR are dependent on BIKE\_MODEL and independent of each other.

In this case, these two columns can be called as multivalued dependent on BIKE\_MODEL. The representation of these dependencies is shown below:

1. BIKE\_MODEL → → MANUF\_YEAR
2. BIKE\_MODEL → → COLOR

This can be read as "BIKE\_MODEL multidetermined MANUF\_YEAR" and "BIKE\_MODEL multidetermined COLOR".

## Join Dependency

- Join decomposition is a further generalization of Multivalued dependencies.
- If the join of R1 and R2 over C is equal to relation R, then we can say that a join dependency (JD) exists.
- Where R1 and R2 are the decompositions R1(A, B, C) and R2(C, D) of a given relations R (A, B, C, D).
- Alternatively, R1 and R2 are a lossless decomposition of R.
- A JD  $\bowtie \{R_1, R_2, \dots, R_n\}$  is said to hold over a relation R if R1, R2, ..., Rn is a lossless-join decomposition.
- The \*(A, B, C, D), (C, D) will be a JD of R if the join of join's attribute is equal to the relation R.
- Here, \*(R1, R2, R3) is used to indicate that relation R1, R2, R3 and so on are a JD of R.

## Inclusion Dependency

- Multivalued dependency and join dependency can be used to guide database design although they both are less common than functional dependencies.
- Inclusion dependencies are quite common. They typically show little influence on designing of the database.
- The inclusion dependency is a statement in which some columns of a relation are contained in other columns.
- The example of inclusion dependency is a foreign key. In one relation, the referring relation is contained in the primary key column(s) of the referenced relation.

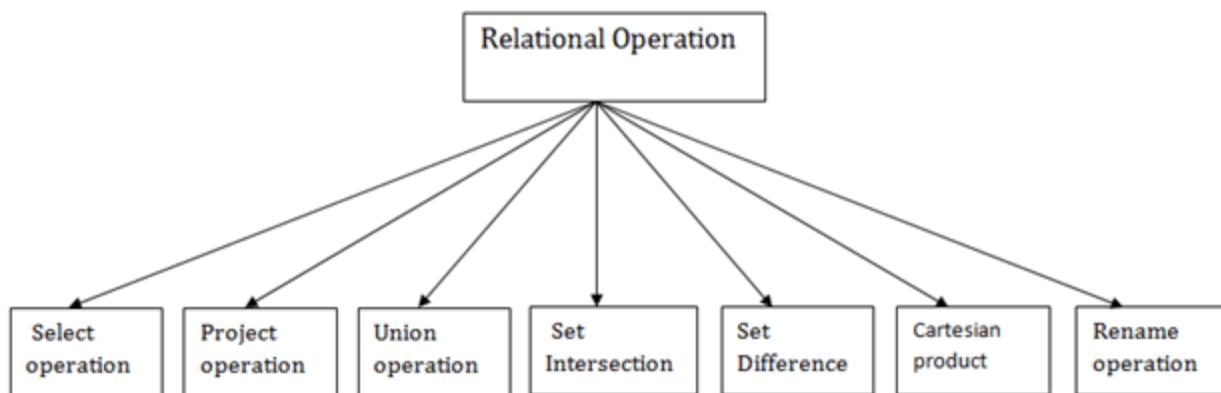
# TOPS Technologies

- Suppose we have two relations R and S which was obtained by translating two entity sets such that every R entity is also an S entity.
- Inclusion dependency would be happen if projecting R on its key attributes yields a relation that is contained in the relation obtained by projecting S on its key attributes.
- In inclusion dependency, we should not split groups of attributes that participate in an inclusion dependency.
- In practice, most inclusion dependencies are key-based that is involved only keys.

## Relational Algebra

Relational algebra is a procedural query language. It gives a step by step process to obtain the result of the query. It uses operators to perform queries.

Types of Relational operation



### 1. Select Operation:

- The select operation selects tuples that satisfy a given predicate.
- It is denoted by sigma ( $\sigma$ ).

1. Notation:  $\sigma p(r)$

Where:

$\sigma$  is used for selection prediction

$r$  is used for relation

$p$  is used as a propositional logic formula which may use connectors like: AND OR and NOT. These relational can use as relational operators like  $=, \neq, \geq, <, >, \leq$ .

For example: LOAN Relation

BRANCH_NAME	LOAN_NO	AMOUNT
-------------	---------	--------

# TOPS Technologies

Downtown	L-17	1000
Redwood	L-23	2000
Perryride	L-15	1500
Downtown	L-14	1500
Mianus	L-13	500
Roundhill	L-11	900
Perryride	L-16	1300

**Input:**

1.  $\sigma$  BRANCH\_NAME="perryride" (LOAN)

**Output:**

BRANCH_NAME	LOAN_NO	AMOUNT
Perryride	L-15	1500
Perryride	L-16	1300

**2. Project Operation:**

- o This operation shows the list of those attributes that we wish to appear in the result. Rest of the attributes are eliminated from the table.
- o It is denoted by  $\prod$ .

1. Notation:  $\prod A_1, A_2, A_n (r)$

**Where**

**A1, A2, A3** is used as an attribute name of relation **r**.

**Example: CUSTOMER RELATION**

NAME	STREET	CITY

# TOPS Technologies

Jones	Main	Harrison
Smith	North	Rye
Hays	Main	Harrison
Curry	North	Rye
Johnson	Alma	Brooklyn
Brooks	Senator	Brooklyn

**Input:**

1.  $\prod \text{NAME, CITY} (\text{CUSTOMER})$

**Output:**

NAME	CITY
Jones	Harrison
Smith	Rye
Hays	Harrison
Curry	Rye
Johnson	Brooklyn
Brooks	Brooklyn

### 3. Union Operation:

- o Suppose there are two tuples R and S. The union operation contains all the tuples that are either in R or S or both in R & S.
- o It eliminates the duplicate tuples. It is denoted by  $U$ .

1. Notation:  $R \cup S$

A union operation must hold the following condition:

# TOPS Technologies

- o R and S must have the attribute of the same number.
- o Duplicate tuples are eliminated automatically.

Example:

## DEPOSITOR RELATION

CUSTOMER_NAME	ACCOUNT_NO
Johnson	A-101
Smith	A-121
Mayes	A-321
Turner	A-176
Johnson	A-273
Jones	A-472
Lindsay	A-284

## BORROW RELATION

CUSTOMER_NAME	LOAN_NO
Jones	L-17
Smith	L-23
Hayes	L-15
Jackson	L-14
Curry	L-93
Smith	L-11
Williams	L-17

Input:



# TOPS Technologies

---

1.  $\prod \text{CUSTOMER\_NAME} (\text{BORROW}) \cup \prod \text{CUSTOMER\_NAME} (\text{DEPOSITOR})$

**Output:**

CUSTOMER_NAME
Johnson
Smith
Hayes
Turner
Jones
Lindsay
Jackson
Curry
Williams
Mayes

## 4. Set Intersection:

- o Suppose there are two tuples R and S. The set intersection operation contains all tuples that are in both R & S.
- o It is denoted by intersection  $\cap$ .

1. Notation:  $R \cap S$

**Example:** Using the above DEPOSITOR table and BORROW table

**Input:**

1.  $\prod \text{CUSTOMER\_NAME} (\text{BORROW}) \cap \prod \text{CUSTOMER\_NAME} (\text{DEPOSITOR})$

**Output:**

## CUSTOMER\_NAME

Smith

Jones

### 5. Set Difference:

- o Suppose there are two tuples R and S. The set intersection operation contains all tuples that are in R but not in S.
- o It is denoted by intersection minus (-).

1. Notation:  $R - S$

**Example:** Using the above DEPOSITOR table and BORROW table

**Input:**

1.  $\prod \text{CUSTOMER\_NAME} (\text{BORROW}) - \prod \text{CUSTOMER\_NAME} (\text{DEPOSITOR})$

**Output:**

## CUSTOMER\_NAME

Jackson

Hayes

Willians

Curry

### 6. Cartesian product

- o The Cartesian product is used to combine each row in one table with each row in the other table. It is also known as a cross product.
- o It is denoted by X.

# TOPS Technologies

---

## 1. Notation: E X D

Example:

### EMPLOYEE

EMP_ID	EMP_NAME	EMP_DEPT
1	Smith	A
2	Harry	C
3	John	B

### DEPARTMENT

DEPT_NO	DEPT_NAME
A	Marketing
B	Sales
C	Legal

### Input:

#### 1. EMPLOYEE X DEPARTMENT

### Output:

EMP_ID	EMP_NAME	EMP_DEPT	DEPT_NO	DEPT_NAME
1	Smith	A	A	Marketing
1	Smith	A	B	Sales
1	Smith	A	C	Legal
2	Harry	C	A	Marketing
2	Harry	C	B	Sales

# TOPS Technologies

2	Harry	C	C	Legal
3	John	B	A	Marketing
3	John	B	B	Sales
3	John	B	C	Legal

## 7. Rename Operation:

The rename operation is used to rename the output relation. It is denoted by **rho** ( $\rho$ ).

**Example:** We can use the rename operator to rename STUDENT relation to STUDENT1.

1.  $\rho(\text{STUDENT1}, \text{STUDENT})$

### SQL Process

- When you are executing an SQL command for any RDBMS, the system determines the best way to carry out your request and SQL engine figures out how to interpret the task.
- There are various components included in the process.
  - These components are Query Dispatcher, Optimization Engines, Classic Query Engine and SQL Query Engine, etc.
  - Classic query engine handles all non-SQL queries but SQL query engine won't handle logical files.

### SQL Commands

- **DDL** – Data Definition Language
- **DML** – Data Manipulation Language
- **DCL** – Data Control Language
- **DQL** – Data Query Language

### DDL – Data Definition Language

Command	Description
<b>CREATE</b>	Creates a new table, a view of a table, or other object in database
<b>ALTER</b>	Modifies an existing database object, such as a table.
<b>DROP</b>	Deletes an entire table, a view of a table or other object in the database.

# TOPS Technologies

<b>TRUNCATE</b>	delete data from table
<b>RENAME</b>	to rename a table

## DQL – Data Query Language

<b>Command</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>SELECT</b>	Retrieves certain records from one or more tables

## DML – Data Manipulation Language

<b>Command</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>INSERT</b>	Creates a record
<b>UPDATE</b>	Modifies records
<b>DELETE</b>	Deletes records
<b>MERGE</b>	merging two rows or two tables

## DCL – Data Control Language

<b>Command</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>GRANT</b>	Gives a privilege to user
<b>REVOKE</b>	Takes back privileges granted from user

## TCL: Transaction Control Language

These commands are to keep a check on other commands and their affect on the database. These commands can annul changes made by other commands by rolling the data back to its original state. It can also make any temporary change permanent.

<b>Command</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>COMMIT</b>	to permanently save

# TOPS Technologies

<b>ROLLBACK</b>	to undo change
<b>SAVEPOINT</b>	to save temporarily

## SQL Join Types

**INNER JOIN:** returns rows when there is a match in both tables.

**LEFT JOIN:** returns all rows from the left table, even if there are no matches in the right table.

**RIGHT JOIN:** returns all rows from the right table, even if there are no matches in the left table.

**FULL JOIN:** returns rows when there is a match in one of the tables. DDL - Data Definition Language

Create, Drop, Use Database Syntax

### SQL CREATE DATABASE STATEMENT

To create a database in RDBMS, **create** command is used. Following is the syntax,

**CREATE DATABASE database\_name;**

### SQL DROP DATABASE Statement:

**DROP DATABASE database\_name;**

### SQL USE STATEMENT

**USE DATABASE database\_name;**

Create, Drop, Alter Table Syntax

### SQL CREATE TABLE STATEMENT

**CREATE TABLE table\_name( column1 datatype, column2 datatype, column3 datatype, .... , columnN datatype, PRIMARY KEY( one or more columns ) );**

### SQL DROP TABLE STATEMENT

**DROP TABLE table\_name;**

### SQL TRUNCATE TABLE STATEMENT

**TRUNCATE TABLE table\_name;**

### SQL ALTER TABLE STATEMENT

**ALTER TABLE table\_name{ADD|DROP|MODIFY}column\_name{data\_ype};**

### SQL ALTER TABLE STATEMENT (RENAME)

**ALTER TABLE table\_name RENAME TO new\_table\_name;**

## Insert, Update, Delete Syntax

### SQL INSERT INTO STATEMENT

- **INSERT INTO table\_name( column1, column2, ... columnN) VALUES ( value1, value2... valueN);**

### SQL UPDATE STATEMENT

- **UPDATE table\_name SET column1 = value1, column2 = value2, ... columnN=valueN [**

WHERE CONDITION ];

## SQL DELETE STATEMENT

- `DELETE FROM table_name WHERE {CONDITION};`

## Select Statement Syntax

### SQL SELECT STATEMENT

- `SELECT column1, column2, columnN FROM table_name;`

### SQL DISTINCT CLAUSE

- `SELECT DISTINCT column1, column2, columnN FROM table_name;`

### SQL WHERE CLAUSE

- `SELECT column1, column2, columnN FROM table_name WHERE CONDITION;`

### SQL AND/OR CLAUSE

- `SELECT column1, column2,...columnN FROM table_name WHERE CONDITION-1 {AND|OR} CONDITION-2;`

### SQL IN CLAUSE

- `SELECT column1, column2, columnN FROM table_name WHERE column_name IN (val-1, val-2,.. val-N);`

### SQL BETWEEN CLAUSE

- `SELECT column1, column2, columnN FROM table_name WHERE column_name BETWEEN val-1 AND val-2;`

### SQL LIKE CLAUSE

- `SELECT column1, column2, columnN FROM table_name WHERE column_name LIKE { PATTERN };`

### SQL ORDER BY CLAUSE

- `SELECT column1, column2, columnN FROM table_name WHERE CONDITION ORDER BY column_name {ASC|DESC};`

### SQL GROUP BY CLAUSE

- `SELECT SUM(column_name) FROM table_name WHERE CONDITION GROUP BY column_name;`

### SQL COUNT CLAUSE

- `SELECT COUNT(column_name) FROM table_name WHERE CONDITION;`

### SQL HAVING CLAUSE

- `SELECT SUM(column_name) FROM table_name WHERE CONDITION`

# TOPS Technologies

**GROUP BY column\_name HAVING (arithmeticfunction condition);**

## Create and Drop Index Syntax

### **SQL CREATE INDEX Statement :**

- **CREATE UNIQUE INDEX index\_name ON table\_name( column1, column2, ... columnN);**

### **SQL DROP INDEX STATEMENT**

- **ALTER TABLE table\_name DROP INDEX**

**index\_name; SQL DESC Statement :**

**DESC table\_name**

## Commit and Rollback Syntax

### **SQL COMMIT STATEMENT**

**COMMIT;**

### **SQL ROLLBACK STATEMENT**

**ROLLBACK;**

## Inner Join Syntax

- The most frequently used and important of the joins is the **INNER JOIN**. They are also referred to as an **EQUIJOIN**.
- The INNER JOIN creates a new result table by combining column values of two tables (table1 and table2) based upon the join-predicate. The query compares each row of table1 with each row of table2 to find all pairs of rows which satisfy the join-predicate. When the join-predicate is satisfied, column values for each matched pair of rows of A and B are combined into a result row.
- **SYNTAX:**
- The basic syntax of **INNER JOIN** is as follows:

```
SELECT table1.column1, table2.column2...FROM table1INNER JOIN table2ON
table1.common_field = table2.common_field;
```

## Left Join Syntax

The SQL **LEFT JOIN** returns all rows from the left table, even if there are no matches in the right table. This means that if the ON clause matches 0 (zero) records in right table, the join will still return a row in the result, but with NULL in each column from right table.

This means that a left join returns all the values from the left table, plus matched values from the right table or NULL in case of no matching join predicate.

### **SYNTAX:**

The basic syntax of **LEFT JOIN** is as follows:

```
SELECT table1.column1, table2.column2...FROM table1LEFT JOIN table2ON
table1.common_field = table2.common_field;
```

## Right Join Syntax

The SQL **RIGHT JOIN** returns all rows from the right table, even if there are no matches in the left table. This means that if the ON clause matches 0 (zero) records in left table, the join will still return a row in the result, but with NULL in each column from left table.

- This means that a right join returns all the values from the right table, plus matched values from the left table or NULL in case of no matching join predicate.

# TOPS Technologies

---

- **SYNTAX:**

- The basic syntax of **RIGHT JOIN** is as follows:  
SELECT table1.column1, table2.column2...FROM table1RIGHT JOIN table2ON  
table1.common\_field = table2.common\_field;

## Full Join Syntax

- The SQL **FULL JOIN** combines the results of both left and right outer joins.
- The joined table will contain all records from both tables, and fill in NULLs for missing matches on either side.
- **SYNTAX:**
- The basic syntax of **FULL JOIN** is as follows:

```
SELECT table1.column1, table2.column2...FROM table1FULL JOIN table2ON
table1.common_field = table2.common_field;
```

## What are SQL Functions?

SQL provides many built-in functions to perform operations on data. These functions are useful while performing mathematical calculations, string concatenations, sub-strings etc. SQL functions are divided into two categories,

1. Aggregate Functions
2. Scalar Functions

### 1. Aggregate Function:

These functions **return a single value** after performing calculations on a group of values. Following are some of the frequently used Aggregate functions.

**AVG()** - Returns the average value

**COUNT()** - Returns the number of rows

**FIRST()** - Returns the first value

**LAST()** - Returns the last value

**MAX()** - Returns the largest value

**MIN()** - Returns the smallest value

**SUM()** - Returns the sum

ID	NAME	MARKS	AGE
1	Harsh	90	19
2	Suresh	50	20
3	Pratik	80	19
4	Dhanraj	95	21
5	Ram	85	18

**Student Table**

#### 1. Avg():

Syntax:

# TOPS Technologies

---

SELECT AVG(column\_name) FROM table\_name;

Example:

SELECT AVG(AGE) AS AvgAge FROM Students;

Output:

AvgAge

19.4

## 2. COUNT():

Syntax:

SELECT COUNT(column\_name) FROM table\_name;

Example:

SELECT COUNT(\*) AS NumStudents FROM Students;

Output:

NumStudents

5

## 3. FIRST():

Syntax:

SELECT FIRST(column\_name) FROM table\_name;

Example:

SELECT FIRST(MARKS) AS MarksFirst FROM Students;

Output:

MarksFirst

90

## 4. LAST():

Syntax:

SELECT LAST(column\_name) FROM table\_name;

Example:

SELECT LAST(MARKS) AS MarksLast FROM Students;

Output:

MarksLast

82

## 5. MAX():

Syntax:

SELECT MAX(column\_name) FROM table\_name;

Example:

SELECT MAX(MARKS) AS MaxMarks FROM Students;

Output:

MaxMarks

95

# TOPS Technologies

## 6. MIN():

Similar to Max() we can use MIN() function.

## 7. SUM():

Syntax:

```
SELECT SUM(column_name) FROM table_name;
```

Example:

```
SELECT SUM(MARKS) AS TotalMarks FROM Students;
```

Output:

```
TotalMarks
```

```
400
```

## 2. Scalar functions:

These functions are based on user input, these too returns single value.

- UCASE() - Converts a field to upper case
- LCASE() - Converts a field to lower case
- MID() - Extract characters from a text field
- LEN() - Returns the length of a text field
- ROUND() - Rounds a numeric field to the number of decimals specified
- NOW() - Returns the current system date and time
- FORMAT() - Formats how a field is to be displayed

ID	NAME	MARKS	AGE
1	Harsh	90	19
2	Suresh	50	20
3	Pratik	80	19
4	Dhanraj	95	21
5	Ram	85	18

Student Table

## 1. UCASE()

Syntax:

```
SELECT UCASE(column_name) FROM table_name;
```

Example:

```
SELECT UCASE(NAME) FROM Students;
```

Output:

```
NAME
```

```
Harsh
```

```
Suresh
```

```
Pratik
```

```
Dhanraj
```

```
Ram
```

# TOPS Technologies

---

## 2.LCASE():

Similar to UCASE() we can use LCASE() function.

### MID()

Syntax:

```
SELECT MID(column_name,start,length) AS some_name FROM table_name;
```

Specifying length is optional here, and start signifies start position ( starting from 1 )  
Example:

```
SELECT MID(NAME,1,4) FROM Students;
```

Output:

NAME
Hars
Sure
Prat
Dhan
Ram

## 3. LEN():

Syntax:

```
SELECT LENGTH(column_name) FROM table_name;
```

Example:

```
SELECT LENGTH(NAME) FROM Students;
```

Output:

NAME
5
6
6
7
3

## 4. ROUND():

Syntax:

```
SELECT ROUND(column_name,decimals) FROM table_name;
```

Decimals- number of decimals to be fetched.

Example:

```
SELECT ROUND(MARKS,0) FROM table_name;
```

Output:

MARKS
90
50
80
95
85

## 5. NOW():

Syntax:

```
SELECT NOW() FROM table_name;
```

Example:

```
SELECT NAME, NOW() AS DateTime FROM Students
```

Output:

NAME	DateTime
Harsh	1/13/2017 1:30:11 PM
Suresh	1/13/2017 1:30:11 PM
Pratik	1/13/2017 1:30:11 PM
Dhanraj	1/13/2017 1:30:11 PM
Ram	1/13/2017 1:30:11 PM

## 6. FORMAT():

Syntax:

```
SELECT FORMAT(column_name) FROM table_name;
```

Example:

```
SELECT NAME, FORMAT(Now(),'YYYY-MM-DD') AS Date FROM Students;
```

Output:

NAME	Date
HARSH	2017-01-13
SURESH	2017-01-13
PRATIK	2017-01-13
DHANRAJ	2017-01-13
RAM	2017-01-13

What is a Stored Procedure?

A stored procedure is a prepared SQL code that you can save, so the code can be reused over and over again. So if you have an SQL query that you write over and over again, save it as a stored procedure, and then just call it to execute it. You can also pass parameters to a stored procedure, so that the stored procedure can act based on the parameter value(s) that is passed.

Creating stored procedure:

To create procedure, use syntax:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE procedure_name
AS
sql_statement
GO;
```

To execute created procedure, use syntax:

EXEC procedure\_name;

Ex.:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE SelectAllCustomers
AS
SELECT * FROM Customers
GO;
```

```
EXEC SelectAllCustomers;
```

### **Stored Procedure with One Parameter**

Creates a stored procedure that selects Customers from a particular City from the "Customers" table:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE SelectAllCustomers @City nvarchar(30)
AS
SELECT * FROM Customers WHERE City = @City
GO;
```

Execute the stored procedure:

```
EXEC SelectAllCustomers @City = "London";
```

### **Stored Procedure with Multiple Parameters**

Setting up multiple parameters is very easy. Just list each parameter and the data type separated by a comma as shown below.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE SelectAllCustomers @City nvarchar(30),
@PostalCode nvarchar(10)
AS
SELECT * FROM Customers WHERE City = @City AND PostalCode = @PostalCode
GO;
```

Execute the stored procedure above as follows:

```
EXEC SelectAllCustomers @City = "London", @PostalCode = "WA1 1DP";
```

## **Trigger:**

A trigger is a stored procedure in database which automatically invokes whenever a special event in the database occurs

For example, a trigger can be invoked when a row is inserted into a specified table.

Syntax:

```
create trigger [trigger_name]
[before | after]
{insert | update | delete}
on [table_name]
[for each row]
[trigger_body]
```

Explanation of syntax:

- **create trigger [trigger\_name]:**  
Creates or replaces an existing trigger with the trigger\_name.
- **[before | after]:**  
This specifies when the trigger will be executed.
- **{insert | update | delete}:**  
This specifies the DML operation.
- **on [table\_name]:**  
This specifies the name of the table associated with the trigger.
- **[for each row]:**  
This specifies a row-level trigger, i.e., the trigger will be executed for each row being affected.
- **[trigger\_body]:**  
This provides the operation to be performed as trigger is fired

BEFORE and AFTER of Trigger:

BEFORE triggers run the trigger action before the triggering statement is run.  
AFTER triggers run the trigger action after the triggering statement is run.

Syntax:

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] TRIGGER trigger_name
{BEFORE | AFTER | INSTEAD OF }
{INSERT [OR] | UPDATE [OR] | DELETE}
[OF col_name]
ON table_name
[REFERENCING OLD AS o NEW AS n]
[FOR EACH ROW]
WHEN (condition)
DECLARE
 Declaration-statements
BEGIN
 Executable-statements
EXCEPTION
 Exception-handling-statements
END;
```

- CREATE [OR REPLACE] TRIGGER trigger\_name – Creates or replaces an existing trigger with the *trigger\_name*.
- {BEFORE | AFTER | INSTEAD OF} – This specifies when the trigger will be executed. The INSTEAD OF clause is used for creating trigger on a view.
- {INSERT [OR] | UPDATE [OR] | DELETE} – This specifies the DML operation.
- [OF col\_name] – This specifies the column name that will be updated.
- [ON table\_name] – This specifies the name of the table associated with the trigger.
- [REFERENCING OLD AS o NEW AS n] – This allows you to refer new and old values for various DML statements, such as INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE.
- [FOR EACH ROW] – This specifies a row-level trigger, i.e., the trigger will be executed for each row being affected. Otherwise the trigger will execute just once when the SQL statement is executed, which is called a table level trigger.
- WHEN (condition) – This provides a condition for rows for which the trigger would fire. This clause is valid only for row-level triggers.

For example:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER display_salary_changes
BEFORE DELETE OR INSERT OR UPDATE ON customers
FOR EACH ROW
WHEN (NEW.ID > 0)
DECLARE
 sal_diff number;
BEGIN
 sal_diff := :NEW.salary - :OLD.salary;
 dbms_output.put_line('Old salary: ' || :OLD.salary);
 dbms_output.put_line('New salary: ' || :NEW.salary);
 dbms_output.put_line('Salary difference: ' || sal_diff);
END;
```

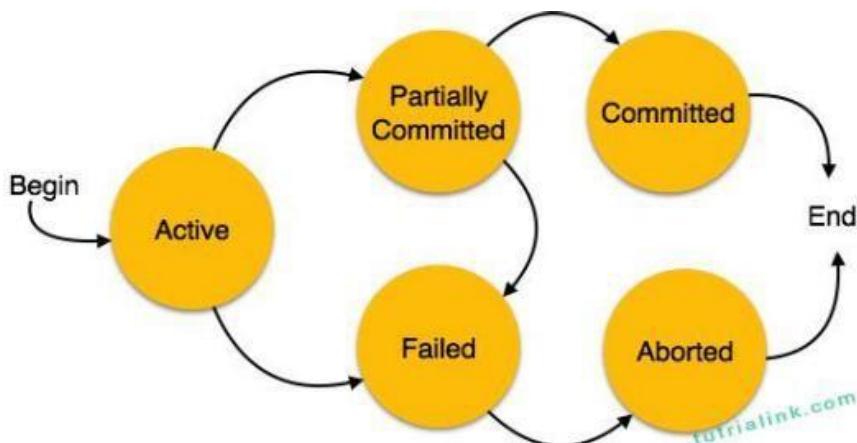
## Transaction

- A transaction is a logical unit of work of database processing that includes one or more database access operations.
- A transaction can be defined as an action or series of actions that is carried out by a single user or application program to perform operations for accessing the contents of the database.
- The operations can include retrieval, (Read), insertion (Write), deletion and modification.
- Each transaction begins with a specific task and ends when all the tasks in the

# TOPS Technologies

groups successfully complete. If any of the tasks fail, the transaction fails. Therefore, a transaction has only two results: success or failure.

- In order to maintain consistency in a database, before and after transaction, certain properties are followed. These are called ACID properties (Atomicity, Consistency, Isolation, and Durability).



## ACID PROPERTY

### 1. Atomicity:

- This property states that a transaction must be treated as an atomic unit, that is, either all of its operations are executed or none.
- There must be no state in a database where a transaction is left partially completed. States should be defined either before the execution of the transaction or after the execution/abortion/failure of the transaction.
- For example, in an application that transfers funds from one account to another, the atomicity property ensures that, if a debit is made successfully from one account, the corresponding credit is made to the other account.

### 2. Consistency:

- The database must remain in a consistent state after any transaction.
- No transaction should have any adverse effect on the data residing in the database.
- If the database was in a consistent state before the execution of a transaction, it must remain consistent after the execution of the transaction as well.
- For example, in an application that transfers funds from one account to another, the consistency property ensures that the total value of funds in both the accounts is the same at the start and end of each transaction.

### 3. Isolation

- In a database system where more than one transaction are being executed simultaneously and in parallel, the property of isolation states that all the transactions will be carried out and executed as if it is the only transaction in the system.

- No transaction will affect the existence of any other transaction.
- For example, in an application that transfers funds from one account to another, the isolation property ensures that another transaction sees the transferred funds in one account or the other, but not in both, nor in either.

#### 4. Durability

- The database should be durable enough to hold all its latest updates even if the system fails or restarts.
- If a transaction updates a chunk of data in a database and commits, then the database will hold the modified data.
- If a transaction commits but the system fails before the data could be written on to the disk, then that data will be updated once the system springs back into action..
- For example, in an application that transfers funds from one account to another, the durability property ensures that the changes made to each account will not be reversed.

## Transaction Control

The following commands are used to control transactions.

COMMIT – to save the changes.

ROLLBACK – to roll back the changes.

SAVEPOINT – creates points within the groups of transactions in which to ROLLBACK.

### 1. Commit:

- The COMMIT command is the transactional command used to save changes invoked by a transaction to the database.
- The COMMIT command saves all the transactions to the database since the last COMMIT or ROLLBACK command.
- The syntax for the COMMIT command is as follows:  
    COMMIT;

### 2. Rollback:

- The ROLLBACK command is the transactional command used to undo transactions that have not already been saved to the database.
- This command can only be used to undo transactions since the last COMMIT or ROLLBACK command was issued.
- The syntax for a ROLLBACK command is as follows –  
    ROLLBACK;

### 3. Savepoint:

- A SAVEPOINT is a point in a transaction when you can roll the transaction back to a certain point without rolling back the entire transaction.
- The syntax for a SAVEPOINT command is as shown below.
- SAVEPOINT SAVEPOINT\_NAME;

# TOPS Technologies

- This command serves only in the creation of a SAVEPOINT among all the transactional statements. The ROLLBACK command is used to undo a group of transactions.
- The syntax for rolling back to a SAVEPOINT is as shown below.  
ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT\_NAME;

## Cursor

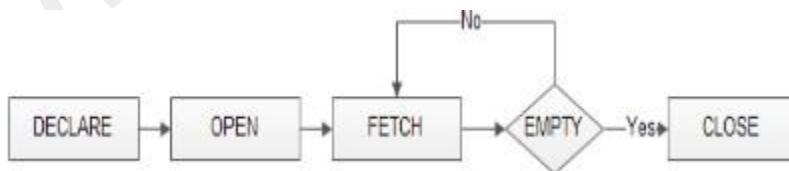
It is a temporary area for work in memory system while the execution of a statement is done.

- A Cursor in SQL is an arrangement of rows together with a pointer that recognizes a present row.
- It is a database object to recover information from a result set one row at once.
- It is helpful when we need to control the record of a table in a singleton technique, at the end of the day one row at any given moment. The arrangement of columns the cursor holds is known as the dynamic set.

## Main components of Cursors

Each cursor contains the following 5 parts,

- Declare Cursor: In this part we declare variables and return a set of values.  
DECLARE cursor\_name CURSOR FOR SELECT\_statement;
- Open: This is the entering part of the cursor.
- OPEN cursor\_name;
- Fetch: Used to retrieve the data row by row from a cursor.
- FETCH cursor\_name INTO variables list;
- Close: This is an exit part of the cursor and used to close a cursor. 1
- CLOSE cursor\_name;



Syntax:

```
DECLARE variables;
records;
create a cursor;
BEGIN
OPEN cursor;
FETCH cursor;
```

```
process the records;
CLOSE cursor;
END;
```

## Database Backup and Recovery

- Database Backup is storage of data that means the copy of the data.
- It is a safeguard against unexpected data loss and application errors.
- It protects the database against data loss.
- If the original data is lost, then using the backup it can be reconstructed.
- The backups are divided into two types,
  1. Physical Backup
  2. Logical Backup

### 1. Physical backups

- Physical Backups are the backups of the physical files used in storing and recovering your database, such as datafiles, control files and archived redo logs, log files.
- It is a copy of files storing database information to some other location, such as disk, some offline storage like magnetic tape.
- Physical backups are the foundation of the recovery mechanism in the database.
- Physical backup provides the minute details about the transaction and modification to the database.

### 2. Logical backup:

- Logical Backup contains logical data which is extracted from a database.
- It includes backup of logical data like views, procedures, functions, tables, etc.
- It is a useful supplement to physical backups in many circumstances but not a sufficient protection against data loss without physical backups, because logical backup provides only structural information.

## Importance of Backups

- Planning and testing backup helps against failure of media, operating system, software and any other kind of failures that cause a serious data crash.
- It determines the speed and success of the recovery.
- Physical backup extracts data from physical storage (usually from disk to tape). Operating system is an example of physical backup.
- Logical backup extracts data using SQL from the database and stores it in a binary file.

- Logical backup is used to restore the database objects into the database. So the logical backup utilities allow DBA (Database Administrator) to back up and recover selected objects within the database.

## Causes of Failure

1. System Crash
  - System crash occurs when there is a hardware or software failure or external factors like a power failure.
  - The data in the secondary memory is not affected when system crashes because the database has lots of integrity. Checkpoint prevents the loss of data from secondary memory.
2. Transaction Failure
  - The transaction failure is affected on only few tables or processes because of logical errors in the code.
  - This failure occurs when there are system errors like deadlock or unavailability of system resources to execute the transaction.
3. Network Failure
  - A network failure occurs when a client – server configuration or distributed database system are connected by communication networks.
4. Disk Failure
  - Disk Failure occurs when there are issues with hard disks like formation of bad sectors, disk head crash, unavailability of disk etc.
5. Media Failure
  - Media failure is the most dangerous failure because, it takes more time to recover than any other kind of failures.
  - A disk controller or disk head crash is a typical example of media failure.

## Recovery

- Recovery is the process of restoring a database to the correct state in the event of a failure.
- It ensures that the database is reliable and remains in consistent state in case of a failure.
- Database recovery can be classified into two parts;
  1. **Rolling Forward:** applies redo records to the corresponding data blocks.
  2. **Rolling Back:** applies rollback segments to the data files. It is stored in transactiontables.

# Module-6

# Linux Scripting

## What is Bash?

Bash is a "Unix shell": a command line interface for interacting with the operating system. It is widely available, being the default shell on many GNU/Linux distributions and on Mac OSX, with ports existing for many other systems.

## What is shell scripting?

A script might contain just a very simple list of commands — or even just a single command — or it might contain functions, loops, conditional constructs, and all the other hallmarks of imperative programming. In effect, a Bash shell script is a computer program written in the Bash programming language.

Shell scripting is the art of creating and maintaining such scripts.

Shell scripts can be called from the interactive command-line described above; or, they can be called from other parts of the system. One script might be set to run when the system boots up; another might be set to run every weekday at 2:30 AM; another might run whenever a user logs into the system.

## Creating and executing Bash shell Scripts

To create a shell script, open a new empty file in your editor. Any text editor will do: **vim**, **emacs**, **gedit**, **dtpad** et cetera are all valid. You might want to choose a more advanced editor like **vim** or **emacs**, however, because these can be configured to recognize shell and Bash syntax and can be a great help in preventing those errors that beginners frequently make, such as forgetting brackets and semi-colons.

First shell script, we'll just write a script which says "Hello World". We will then try to get more out of a Hello World program than any other tutorial you've ever read.

**Create a file (first.sh) as follows:**

```
#!/bin/sh
this is a comment!
echo Hello World # This is a comment, too!
```

The first line tells Unix that the file is to be executed by /bin/sh. This is the standard location of the Bourne shell on just about every Unix system. If you're using GNU/Linux, /bin/sh is normally a symbolic link to bash.

The second line begins with a special symbol: #. This marks the line as a comment, and it is ignored completely by the shell.

Now **run chmod 755 first.sh** to make the text file executable, and run **./first.sh**.

Your screen should then look like this:

```
$ chmod 755 first.sh
$./first.sh
Hello World
$
```

## Executing the script

The script should have execute permissions for the correct owners in order to be runnable. When setting permissions, check that you really obtained the permissions that you want. When this is done, the script can run like any other command.

### **chmod u+x script.sh**

If you did not put the scripts directory in your PATH, and . (the current directory) is not in the PATH either, you can activate the script like this:

### **./script\_name.sh**

A script can also explicitly be executed by a given shell, but generally we only do this if we want to obtain special behavior, such as checking if the script works with another shell or printing traces for debugging:

```
rbash script_name.sh
sh script_name.sh
bash -x script_name.sh
```

## User input:

If we would like to ask the user for input then we use a command called **read**.

### **read var1**

```
#!/bin/bash
Ask the user for their name
echo Hello, who am I talking to?
read varname
echo It's nice to meet you $varname
#!/bin/bash
Demonstrate how read actually works
echo What cars do you like?
```

```
read car1 car2 car3
echo Your first car was: $car1
echo Your second car was: $car2
echo Your third car was: $car3
```

## Quoting Special Characters:

The backslash (\) character is used to mark these special characters so that they are not interpreted by the shell, but passed on to the command being run (for example, **echo**).

So to output the string: (Assuming that the value of **\$X** is 5):

A quote is ", backslash is \, backtick is ` . A few spaces are and dollar is \$. **\$X** is 5.

We would have to write:

```
$ echo "A quote is \"", backslash is \\, backtick is \`."A quote is ", backslash is \, backtick is. $ echo "A few spaces are\$X is ${X}."
```

A few spaces are and dollar is \$. **\$X** is 5.

## Variables:

Assigning Values to variables:  
VariableName=value

### **variables.sh**

```
#!/bin/sh
MESSAGE="Hello World"
echo $MESSAGE
```

## Arithmetic expansion

```
#!/bin/bash
Basic arithmetic using let
a=5+4
echo $a # 9
 "a = 5 + 4"
echo $a # 9
 "a = 4 * 5"
echo $a # 20
 "a = $1 + 30"
echo $a # 30 + first command line argument
a=$[2+2]
```

```
echo $a
```

**for Loop:**

```
for var in <list>
do
 <commands>
done

#!/bin/bash
Basic for loop
names='linux'
for name in $names
do
 echo $name
done
echo All done
```

## Ranges

```
#!/bin/bash
Basic range in for loop
for value in {1..5}
do
 echo $value
done
echo All done
```

```
#!/bin/bash
Basic range with steps for loop
for value in {10..0..2}
do
 echo $value
done
echo All done
```

## Bash Conditionals and Control Structures

```
if [<some test>]
then
 <commands>
fi
#!/bin/bash
if statement
if [$1 -gt 100]
then
 echo Hey that's a large
 number.
pwd
fi
date
```

```
#!/bin/bash
Nested if statements
if [$1 -gt 100]
then
 echo Hey that's a large number.
 if (($1 % 2 == 0))
 then
 echo And is also an even number.
 fi
fi
```

<pre>#!/bin/bash # else example #!/bin/bash # elif statements if [ \$# -eq 1 ] then nl \$1 else nl /dev/stdin Fi</pre>	<pre>if [ \$1 -ge 18 ] then echo You may go to the party. elif [ \$2 == 'yes' ] then echo You may go to the party but be backbefore midnight. else echo You may not go to the party. fi</pre>
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Operators

Operator	Description
! EXPRESSION	The EXPRESSION is false.
-n STRING	The length of STRING is greater than zero.
-z STRING	The length of STRING is zero (ie it is empty).
STRING1 = STRING2	STRING1 is equal to STRING2
STRING1 != STRING2	STRING1 is not equal to STRING2
INTEGER1 -eq INTEGER2	INTEGER1 is numerically equal to INTEGER2
INTEGER1 -gt INTEGER2	INTEGER1 is numerically greater than INTEGER2
INTEGER1 -lt INTEGER2	INTEGER1 is numerically less than INTEGER2

## Case Statements:

<pre>case &lt;variable&gt; in &lt;pattern 1&gt;) &lt;commands&gt; ;; &lt;pattern 2&gt;) &lt;other commands&gt; ;; Esac</pre>	<pre>#!/bin/bash # case example case \$1 in start) echo starting ;; stop) echo stopping ;; restart) echo restarting ;;</pre>
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

	<p>*) echo don't know ;; esac</p>
--	-----------------------------------------------

TOPS Technologies